

Dear Reader ...

We would like to congratulate you on the purchase of your new motorhome. You have selected a top-quality vehicle which will afford you many years of enjoyment.

To enable you to always use and operate your motorhome properly and easily, your Bürstner dealer will first provide you detailed instructions for all important functions when you take delivery.

This manual, the instruction manuals from the base vehicle manufacturer as well as the instruction manuals from the appliance manufacturer will always be at hand to answer any questions you may have regarding your motorhome.

Before your first journey

Please familiarise yourself with this manual rather than relying on it strictly for reference.

Fill in the warranty cards for the appliances and special equipment in the individual instructions and send these cards to the respective manufacturers. This ensures your warranty claim for each appliance.



Instruction manual

1	Introduction	7	4.9	Pilot seats for the driver's and front passenger's seats	42
1.1	General	8	4.10	Seat heater (special equipment)	42
1.2	Environmental tips	8	4.11	Headrests	43
2	Safety	11	4.12	Seating arrangement	43
2.1	Fire prevention	11	4.13	Roman shade in the driver's cabin	44
2.1.1	Avoidance of fire risks	11	4.13.1	Pleated Roman shades	44
2.1.2	Fire-fighting	11	4.13.2	Roman shades, Remis (partially special equipment)	45
2.1.3	In case of fire	11	4.14	Refuelling	45
2.2	General	12	4.15	Topping up AdBlue® (Citroen base vehicle)	46
2.3	Road safety	12	5	Pitching the motorhome	47
2.4	Towing	14	5.1	Handbrake	47
2.5	Gas system	14	5.2	Entrance step	47
2.5.1	General instructions	14	5.3	Ramps	47
2.5.2	Gas bottles	15	5.4	Wheel chocks	47
2.6	Electrical system	16	5.5	Supports	48
2.7	Water system	16	5.5.1	General instructions	48
3	Before the journey	17	5.5.2	Steady legs (special equipment)	48
3.1	Keys	17	5.5.3	Steady legs (AL-KO) (special equipment)	49
3.2	Registration	17	5.6	230 V connection	50
3.3	Payload	17	5.7	Refrigerator	50
3.3.1	Terms	18	5.8	Satellite unit (special equipment)	50
3.3.2	Calculating the payload	20	5.8.1	Satellite unit with manual satellite selection (TeleSat)	50
3.3.3	Loading the vehicle correctly	21	5.8.2	Satellite unit with automatic antenna alignment (Teleco)	52
3.3.4	Rear garage/rear storage space	22	5.8.3	Satellite unit with automatic antenna alignment (Oyster Premium)	53
3.3.5	Bike rack (special equipment)	23	5.9	Awning (special equipment)	55
3.3.6	Load rack SAWIKO (special equipment)	25	6	Living	57
3.4	Towing	26	6.1	Central locking system (special equipment)	57
3.5	Caravan coupling (special equipment)	27	6.2	Conversion door	58
3.6	Electrically operated entrance step (partially special equipment)	28	6.2.1	Conversion door, outside (partially special equipment)	58
3.7	TV unit (special equipment)	29	6.2.2	Conversion door, outside	59
3.8	Sink and drain basic covers (partially special equipment)	29	6.2.3	Conversion door, inside	59
3.9	Securing add-on parts	30	6.2.4	Window of conversion door (partially special equipment)	60
3.10	Gas regulator	31	6.2.5	Folding insect screen on the conversion door (partially special equipment)	60
3.11	Snow chains (special equipment)	32	6.3	External flaps	61
3.12	Road safety	33	6.3.1	Flap lock with recessed handle	61
4	During the journey	35	6.3.2	Garage flap emergency release	62
4.1	Driving the motorhome	35	6.3.3	Flap lock with push button	62
4.2	Reversing camera (special equipment)	36	6.3.4	Service unit flap lock	63
4.3	Driving speed	36	6.4	Furniture flaps	63
4.4	Brakes	37	6.4.1	Furniture flaps with push button	63
4.5	Air suspension Goldschmitt (special equipment)	37			
4.6	Seat belts	38			
4.6.1	General	38			
4.6.2	Fastening the seat belt correctly	38			
4.7	Child restraint systems	39			
4.8	ISOFIX child safety seat mounting system (special equipment)	41			

Contents

6.4.2	Furniture flaps with handle and push button	64	6.14.6	Pull-down bed, electrically operated (Ixeo Time, Lyseo TD)	96
6.4.3	Furniture flaps with handle and unlocking bar	64	6.14.7	Pull-down bed at the rear, electrically operated (Lyseo TD) (special equipment)	99
6.4.4	Furniture flaps with release handle	65	6.15	Converting seating groups for sleeping	101
6.5	Floor compartment cover	65	6.15.1	Conversion of semi-dinette into guest bed	103
6.6	Rotating seats	66	6.15.2	Conversion semi-dinette into transverse bed (with additional cushion table)	104
6.7	Light switch	66	6.15.3	Conversion L-seating group into transverse bed (with additional cushion table)	104
6.7.1	Entrance area	66	6.15.4	Conversion L-seating group into transverse bed (without additional cushion table)	105
6.7.2	Interior	67	6.15.5	Conversion L-seating group into transverse bed (Ixeo IT 680, Lyseo TD 590)	105
6.7.3	Wardrobe light (partially special equipment)	68	6.15.6	Conversion L-seating group into transverse bed (Ixeo IT 734)	106
6.7.4	Tube lamp in the rear garage	68	6.15.7	Conversion semi-dinette into transverse bed (with additional cushion table and bed widening)	106
6.8	Spotlight	69	6.15.8	Conversion L-seating group into transverse bed (Ixeo IT 640)	107
6.9	Holder for flat screen	70	6.15.9	Lying surface of single beds (special equipment)	107
6.9.1	Holder on the column	70	6.16	Shower connection point for external shower (special equipment)	108
6.9.2	Holder with jointed arm	70			
6.9.3	Wall holder	71	7	Gas system	109
6.9.4	Holder with release lever	71	7.1	General	109
6.9.5	Holder, rotatable	72	7.2	Gas bottles	111
6.10	Ventilation	72	7.3	Gas isolator taps	112
6.11	Windows	73	7.4	External gas connection (special equipment)	113
6.11.1	Hinged window	74	7.5	Gas bottle switching facility (special equipment)	114
6.11.2	Sliding window with pressure lock	76	7.6	Changing gas bottles	117
6.11.3	Blind and insect screen	76	8	Electrical system	119
6.11.4	Roman shade and insect screen	77	8.1	General safety instructions	119
6.11.5	Roman shades for windscreen, driver's window and front passenger's window	78	8.2	Terms	119
6.12	Skylights	79	8.3	USB socket (partially special equipment)	120
6.12.1	Skylight with snap latch	80	8.4	12 V power supply	121
6.12.2	Heki skylight (mini and midi) (partially special equipment)	81	8.4.1	Selector switch for radio (special equipment)	121
6.12.3	Omni-Vent skylight with fan (special equipment)	82	8.4.2	Starter battery	122
6.12.4	Skyroof skylight (partially special equipment)	84	8.4.3	Living area battery	123
6.13	Tables	86			
6.13.1	Fixed table	87			
6.13.2	Suspension table	88			
6.13.3	Lift-off table	89			
6.13.4	Lift-off table (variant)	90			
6.13.5	Coffee table (dependent on model)	91			
6.14	Beds	91			
6.14.1	Fixed bed (gas-pressure springs)	91			
6.14.2	Fixed bed (adjustable head section)	92			
6.14.3	Fixed bed, hydraulic height adjustable (special equipment)	92			
6.14.4	Fixed bed, height adjustable via strap system (special equipment)	93			
6.14.5	Pull-down bed, electrically operated (Ixeo TL)	94			

8.4.4	Charging batteries via a 230 V power supply	125	9.5	Cooker	166
8.4.5	Charging batteries via the vehicle engine	125	9.5.1	Gas cooker	167
8.5	Transformer/rectifier (EBL 119).	125	9.5.2	Gas oven (Dometic) (special equipment)	168
8.5.1	Battery cut-off switch	127	9.5.3	Microwave oven (special equipment)	170
8.5.2	Battery selector switch	127	9.5.4	Extractor hood (special equipment)	171
8.5.3	Battery monitor	127	9.6	Refrigerator	171
8.5.4	Charging the battery	128	9.6.1	Refrigerator ventilation grill	172
8.6	Panel LT 96	128	9.6.2	Dometic MES/AES	173
8.6.1	Button for 12 V power supply	128	9.6.3	Thetford N3000 E/A	176
8.6.2	V/tank gauge for battery voltage and water or waste water levels	129	9.6.4	Thetford N97	179
8.6.3	Button for water pump	130	9.6.5	Refrigerator door locking mechanism	181
8.6.4	Battery alarm for the living area battery	130	10	Sanitary fittings	185
8.6.5	12 V indicator lamp	130	10.1	Water supply, general	185
8.6.6	230 V indicator lamp	131	10.2	Water system	186
8.7	Solar installation (special equipment)	131	10.2.1	Water tank	186
8.8	230 V power supply	132	10.2.2	Drinking water filler neck	186
8.8.1	230 V connection (CEE socket outlet)	132	10.2.3	Filling the water system	186
8.8.2	Connecting the 230 V power supply	132	10.2.4	Topping up the water	188
8.9	Fuses	134	10.2.5	Closing/opening the overflow	189
8.9.1	12 V fuses	134	10.2.6	Draining water (rotary handle with overflow)	189
8.9.2	230 V fuse	139	10.2.7	Emptying the water system	190
8.10	External socket (special equipment)	140	10.3	Waste water installation	192
8.11	Circuit diagrams	141	10.3.1	Draining waste water	192
8.11.1	Circuit diagrams, interior	141	10.3.2	Heater for waste water tank and waste water pipes (special equipment)	193
8.11.2	Circuit diagram, exterior	143	10.4	Toilet compartment	194
9	Appliances	145	10.5	Toilet	194
9.1	General	145	10.5.1	Preparing toilet	195
9.2	Heater and boiler	146	10.5.2	Swivel toilet	196
9.2.1	Models with waste gas vent on the right-hand side of the vehicle	146	10.5.3	Toilet with fixed seat	197
9.2.2	To heat properly	147	10.5.4	Emptying the sewage tank	198
9.2.3	Hot-air heater and boiler with CP plus digital operating unit	147	11	Care	199
9.2.4	Alde hot-water heater and boiler (special equipment)	152	11.1	External care	199
9.2.5	Wall flue	159	11.1.1	General	199
9.2.6	Electrical floor warming unit (special equipment)	160	11.1.2	Washing with a high-pressure cleaner	199
9.3	Air conditioning unit (special equipment)	160	11.1.3	Washing the vehicle	200
9.3.1	Truma Aventa air conditioning unit	160	11.1.4	Windows of acrylic glass	200
9.3.2	Telair	164	11.1.5	Entrance step	200
9.4	Controlling Truma appliances with mobile terminal (special equipment)	165	11.1.6	Air suspension (Goldschmitt)	201
			11.2	Interior care	201
			11.2.1	Scratch-resistant surface (kitchen worktop and table top) (special equipment)	202
			11.3	Water system	203
			11.3.1	Cleaning the waste water tank	203
			11.3.2	Cleaning the water tank	203
			11.3.3	Cleaning the water pipes	204
			11.3.4	Disinfecting the water system	204

11.4	Extractor hood	205	14	Troubleshooting	229
11.5	Air conditioning unit	205	14.1	Air suspension (Goldschmitt)	229
11.5.1	Truma	205	14.2	Braking system	229
11.5.2	Telair	206	14.3	Satellite unit	229
11.6	Winter care	206	14.4	Electrical system	230
11.6.1	Preparations	207	14.5	Gas system	232
11.6.2	Winter operation	207	14.6	Heater/boiler	233
11.6.3	At the end of the winter season	207	14.6.1	Truma heater/boiler with CP plus digital operating unit	233
11.7	Lay-up	207	14.6.2	Alde heater/boiler	235
11.7.1	Temporary lay-up	207	14.7	Air conditioning unit	236
11.7.2	Winter lay-up	209	14.7.1	Truma	236
11.7.3	Starting up the vehicle after a temporary lay-up or after lay-up over winter	210	14.7.2	Telair	237
12	Maintenance	211	14.8	Cooker	237
12.1	Inspection work	211	14.8.1	Gas cooker/gas oven	237
12.2	Maintenance work	211	14.8.2	Microwave oven	238
12.3	Doors	211	14.9	Refrigerator	238
12.4	Living area battery	212	14.9.1	General faults	238
12.5	Extractor hood	212	14.9.2	Dometic MES/AES	239
12.6	Alde hot-water heater	212	14.9.3	Thetford N 3000	240
12.6.1	Checking the fluid level	213	14.9.4	Thetford N 97	240
12.6.2	Topping up heating fluid	213	14.10	Water supply	241
12.6.3	Bleeding the heating system	214	14.11	Body	242
12.7	Replacing bulbs, external	214	14.12	Pull-down bed, electrically operated (Ixeo TL)	243
12.7.1	Front lights	215	15	Special equipment	245
12.7.2	Rear lights	216	15.1	Weight details for special equipment	245
12.7.3	Side lights	216	16	Technical data	249
12.7.4	Types of bulbs for exterior lighting	217	16.1	View of ground plans	249
12.8	Replacing bulbs, internal	217	16.2	Table of linear measures	256
12.8.1	Spotlight (movable)	218	17	Helpful notes	257
12.8.2	Surface mounted light	218	17.1	Traffic rules in foreign countries	257
12.9	Spare parts	219	17.2	Help on Europe's roads	257
12.10	Vehicle identification plate	220	17.3	Gas supply in European countries	258
12.11	Warning and information stickers	220	17.4	Toll regulations in European countries	258
13	Wheels and tyres	221	17.5	Tips on staying overnight safely during travel	258
13.1	General	221	17.6	Tips for winter campers	259
13.2	Tyre selection	222	17.7	Travel checklists	260
13.3	Tyre specifications	223	18	Inspection plan	263
13.4	Handling of tyres	223			
13.5	Changing wheels	224			
13.5.1	General instructions	224			
13.5.2	Tightening torque	225			
13.5.3	Changing a wheel	226			
13.6	Spare wheel support (special equipment)	227			
13.7	Tyre pressure	227			

Please read this instruction manual completely before using the vehicle for the first time!

Always keep this instruction manual in the vehicle. Also inform all other users of the safety regulations.



- ▶ The non-observance of this symbol can lead to personal injury.



- ▷ The non-observance of this symbol can lead to damage being caused to, or inside the vehicle.



- ▷ This symbol indicates recommendations or special aspects.



- ▷ This symbol indicates actions which lead to environmental awareness.

This instruction manual contains sections which describe model-specific equipment or special equipment. These sections are specially marked. It may be that your vehicle has not been fitted with this special equipment. In some cases, the actual equipment of your vehicle may therefore be different from that shown in some illustrations and descriptions.

However, your vehicle may be fitted with other special equipment not described in this instruction manual.

Special equipment is described when an explanation is required.

Adhere to the instruction manuals which are separately enclosed.



- ▷ The details "right", "left", "front" and "rear" always refer to the vehicle in direction of travel.
- ▷ All dimensions and weight details are "approximate".

Should the vehicle be subjected to damage due to a failure to follow the instructions in this instruction manual, then the guarantee claim is deemed invalid.

Our vehicles are subjected to continuous development. Please understand that we reserve the right to alter the form, equipment and technology. Therefore, no claims can be made against the manufacturer as a result of the contents of this instruction manual. The equipment which was known and included at the time of going to press is described.

The reprinting, translation and copying, including extracts is not permitted without prior written authorisation from the manufacturer.

1.1 General

The vehicle is constructed in accordance with the latest technology and the recognised safety regulations. Nevertheless, personal injury may result and the vehicle may be damaged if the safety instructions in this instruction manual are not followed.

Before using the vehicle for the first time, equip it with the legally prescribed equipment (e.g. First Aid kit, warning vest, hazard warning triangle etc.). Observe the relevant equipment regulations when travelling abroad.

Only use the vehicle in a technically impeccable condition. Follow the instructions in the instruction manual.

Malfunctions which impair the safety of persons or the vehicle should be immediately remedied by qualified personnel. To avoid further damages, observe the duty to avert, minimise or mitigate loss for the user during faults.

Have the vehicle's braking and gas systems inspected and repaired by an authorised specialist workshop only.

Alterations to the body are only to be carried out with the authorisation of the manufacturer.

The vehicle is designed for the exclusive transport of persons. Luggage and accessories may only be transported up to the maximum permissible gross weight.

Observe the test and inspection periods stipulated by the manufacturer.

1.2 Environmental tips



- ▷ Be considerate of the environment.
- ▷ Remember that: All kinds of waste water and household waste are not to be disposed of in drains or in the open countryside.
- ▷ On board, collect waste water only in the waste water tank or – if necessary – in other containers designed for that purpose.
- ▷ Only empty the waste water tank and toilet cassette or sewage tank at disposal stations at the camping or caravan sites, which are especially provided for this purpose. When stopping in towns and communities, observe the instructions at caravan sites or ask where there are disposal stations.
- ▷ Empty waste water tank as often as possible, even when it is not completely full (hygiene).
If possible, flush out waste water tank and, if necessary, drainage pipe with fresh water every time it is emptied.
- ▷ Never allow the toilet cassette or sewage tank to become too full. Empty the toilet cassette or sewage tank frequently, at the latest as soon as the level indicator lights up.
- ▷ Separate household waste according to glass, tin cans, plastic and wet waste also when on a journey. Enquire at the town or community authority about disposal points. Household waste is not to be disposed of in waste paper baskets which are situated at car parks.
- ▷ Empty waste bins as often as possible into the containers provided for this purpose. This helps to avoid unpleasant smells and an accumulation of rubbish on board.
- ▷ When parked, do not allow the engine to run more than necessary. When running idle, a cold engine releases more contaminants than usual. The running temperature of the engine is achieved more quickly whilst the vehicle is in motion.



- ▷ Use an environmentally-friendly WC chemical agent for the WC which can also be biologically degraded and only use small doses.
- ▷ When staying in towns and communities for long periods, search for parking areas which are specially reserved for motorhomes. Enquire at the town or community authority about parking spaces.
- ▷ Always leave the parking places in a clean condition.

Chapter overview

This chapter contains important safety instructions. The safety instructions are for the protection of persons and property.

2.1 Fire prevention

2.1.1 Avoidance of fire risks



- ▶ Never leave children in the vehicle unattended.
- ▶ Keep flammable materials clear of heating and cooking appliances.
- ▶ Halogen lamps can get very hot. When the light is switched on, there must always be a safety distance of 30 cm between light and flammable objects. Fire hazard!
- ▶ Never use portable heating or cooking appliances.
- ▶ Only authorised qualified personnel may make changes to the electrical system, gas system or appliances.

2.1.2 Fire-fighting



- ▶ Always carry a dry powder fire extinguisher in the vehicle. The fire extinguisher must be approved, tested and close at hand.
- ▶ Have the fire extinguisher tested at regular intervals by authorised qualified personnel. Observe the date of testing.
- ▶ Depending on the equipment, the fire extinguisher is included in the scope of delivery.
- ▶ Always keep a fire blanket near the cooker.

2.1.3 In case of fire



- ▶ Evacuate all passengers.
- ▶ Cut off the electrical power supply and disconnect from the mains.
- ▶ Close regulator tap on the gas bottle.
- ▶ Sound the alarm and call the fire brigade.
- ▶ Fight the fire if this is possible without risk.



- ▷ Acquaint yourself with the position and operation of the emergency exits.
- ▷ Keep escape routes clear.
- ▷ Observe the fire extinguisher instructions for use.

2.2 General



- ▶ The oxygen in the vehicle interior is used up by breathing and the use of gas operated appliances. That is why the used air must be replaced permanently. For this purpose, forced ventilation systems (e.g. skylights with forced ventilation, mushroom-shaped vents or floor vents) are installed in the vehicle. Never cover or block forced ventilations from the inside or outside with objects such as e.g. a winter mat. Keep forced ventilations clear of snow and leaves. There is a danger of suffocation due to increased CO₂ levels.
- ▶ Do not use storage spaces or rear garages as places for people or animals to stay or sleep in. These spaces are not forced-air ventilated. There is a danger of suffocation due to oxygen deprivation or exhaust from the heater.
- ▶ Observe the headroom of the doors.



- ▷ As far as the fitted appliances (heater, cooker, refrigerator, etc.) and the base vehicle (engine, brakes, etc.) are concerned, the instruction manuals are authoritative. It is imperative that they be observed.
- ▷ Fitting accessories or special equipment can alter the dimensions, weight and road behaviour of the vehicle. Some of the parts must be entered in the vehicle papers.
- ▷ Only use wheel rims and tyres which are approved for the vehicle. Information concerning the size of the approved wheel rims and tyres is included in the vehicle documents or can be obtained from authorised dealers and service centres.
- ▷ Firmly apply the handbrake when parking the vehicle.
- ▷ If the maximum permissible gross weight of the vehicle exceeds 4 tonnes, wheel chocks must be used when parking on gradients. The wheel chocks are provided as standard for vehicles with a maximum permissible gross weight exceeding 4 tonnes.



- ▷ When leaving the vehicle, it is imperative that all doors, external flaps and windows are closed.
- ▷ Always carry the legally prescribed equipment (e.g. first aid kit, warning vest, hazard warning triangle etc.) with you. The regulations of the host country apply when travelling abroad.
- ▷ The vehicle may only be driven by drivers who hold a driving licence which is valid for the respective vehicle class.
- ▷ When selling the vehicle, hand over all instruction manuals for the vehicle and the fitted appliances.

2.3 Road safety



- ▶ Before commencing the journey, carry out a functional check of indicating and lighting equipment, the steering and the brakes.
- ▶ If the vehicle has been stationary for a long period (approx. 10 months) have the braking and gas systems checked by an authorised specialist workshop.
- ▶ Before commencing the journey and after short interruptions of the journey, ensure that the entrance step is completely retracted.
- ▶ Before commencing the journey, secure the pull-down bed.



- ▶ Before commencing the journey, open, lock and secure the shades situated on the windscreen and on the driver's and front passenger's windows.
- ▶ Before commencing the journey, rotate all swivel seats in the direction of travel and lock in position. During the journey, the swivel seats must remain locked in place in the direction of travel.
- ▶ Carefully store all moving parts and all loose objects before starting your journey.
- ▶ Before commencing the journey, place and secure the flat screen and screen support in the initial position. If the screen holder is installed in a TV cabinet: Close TV cabinet.
- ▶ Before commencing the journey, remove the loose sink cover (if present) and store it securely in the kitchen unit or wardrobe.
- ▶ Before commencing the journey, fix adjustable tables.
- ▶ During the journey, persons are only to sit on the permitted seats (see chapter 4). The authorised number of seats is stipulated in the vehicle documents.
- ▶ Seat belts must be worn by all passengers.
- ▶ Fasten your seat belts before the beginning of the journey and keep them fastened during the journey.
- ▶ When travelling, secure children under 13 years of age that are smaller than 150 cm, with a suitable and officially approved child restraint system.
- ▶ Only attach the child restraint system to seats that are specified for this purpose. We strongly recommend to install child restraint systems preferably in the second row of seats.
- ▶ **Never** use rearward-facing child restraints on a seat with **activated front airbag**. This may lead to **death** or to **serious injuries** in children.
- ▶ The base vehicle is a commercial vehicle (small truck). Adjust your driving technique accordingly.
- ▶ In case of underpasses, tunnels or similar obstacles, note the total height of the vehicle (including the roof load).
- ▶ In winter, the roof must be free of snow and ice before commencing the journey.
- ▶ Check tyre pressure before a journey or every 2 weeks. Wrong tyre pressure causes excessive wear and can lead to damage or even to tyre burst. You can lose control of the vehicle (see section 13.7).
- ▶ Do not operate the heater at petrol stations. Danger of explosion!
- ▶ Do not operate the heater in closed spaces. Danger of suffocation!



- ▷ Before commencing the journey, distribute the payload evenly within the vehicle (see chapter 3).
- ▷ When loading the vehicle and when taking a rest from driving, in order to load luggage or food, for example, observe the maximum permissible gross weight and axle loads (refer to vehicle documents).
- ▷ Before commencing the journey, close and lock, if possible, all inner doors, adjustable partition walls, drawers and flaps. Engage the refrigerator door securing device.
- ▷ Before commencing the journey, close windows and skylights.



- ▷ Before commencing the journey, close all external flaps and lock them.
- ▷ Before commencing the journey, remove the external supports and retract the corner steadies or steady legs, which are fitted to the vehicle.
- ▷ Before commencing the journey, put the antenna in park position.
- ▷ During the initial journey and each time after changing a wheel, re-tighten the wheel bolts/wheel nuts after 50 km (30 miles). Subsequently inspect them at regular intervals in order to ensure that they are firmly seated. See chapter 13 for tightening torque.
- ▷ Tyres should not be older than 6 years as the material becomes brittle over time (see chapter 13).
- ▷ When using snow chains, the tyres, wheel suspension and steering are subjected to an additional load. When using snow chains, drive slowly (maximum speed 50 km/h) and only on streets which are completely covered with snow. Otherwise the vehicle could be damaged.

2.4 Towing



- ▶ Care is to be taken when connecting and detaching a trailer. Risk of accident and injury!
- ▶ No persons are to be between the towing vehicle and the trailer during positioning for connecting and detaching.

2.5 Gas system

2.5.1 General instructions



- ▶ The operator of the gas system is responsible for the performance of recurring inspections and for complying with the maintenance intervals.
- ▶ Before commencing the journey, when leaving the vehicle or when gas equipment is not in use, close all gas isolator taps and the main isolator tap on the gas bottle.
- ▶ All gas-operated devices (heater, cooker, oven, grill, refrigerator - depending on the equipment) must be switched off for refuelling, on ferries or in the garage. Danger of explosion!
- ▶ Do not use gas-operated devices in closed spaces (e.g. garages). Danger of poisoning and suffocation!
- ▶ Only have the gas system maintained, repaired or altered by an authorised specialist workshop.
- ▶ Have the gas system checked by an authorised specialist workshop according to the national regulations before commissioning. This also applies for not registered vehicles. For modifications to the gas system have the gas system immediately checked by an authorised specialist workshop.
- ▶ The gas pressure regulator, the gas tubes, and the exhaust gas pipes must also be inspected. The gas pressure regulator and the gas tubes must be replaced observing the nationally defined deadlines (the latest after 10 years). The vehicle owner is responsible for seeing that this is carried out.
- ▶ In case of a defect of the gas system (gas odour, high gas consumption) there is danger of explosion! Close regulator tap on the gas bottle immediately. Open doors and windows and ventilate well.



- ▶ If the gas system is defective: Do not smoke; do not ignite any open flames, and do not operate electric switches (light switches etc.). Check the tightness of gas-conducting parts and lines with leakage search spray. Do not check with an open flame.
- ▶ Only the stipulated devices may be connected to internal connections. Do not operate any device outside the vehicle if it is connected to an internal connector.
- ▶ Before using the cooker make sure that there is sufficient ventilation. Open a window or the skylight.
- ▶ Do not use gas-operated cooking and baking facilities for heating purposes.
- ▶ If there are several gas devices, each gas device must have its own gas isolator tap. If individual gas devices are not in use, close the respective gas isolator tap.
- ▶ Ignition safety valves must close within 1 minute after the gas flame has extinguished. A clicking sound is audible. Check function from time to time.
- ▶ The built-in gas devices are exclusively meant for use with propane or butane gas or a mixture of both. The gas pressure regulator as well as all built-in gas devices are designed for a gas pressure of 30 mbar.
- ▶ Propane gas is capable of gasification up to -42 °C, whereas butane gas gasifies at 0 °C. Below these temperatures no gas pressure is available. Butane gas is unsuitable for use in winter.
- ▶ Due to its function and construction, the gas bottle compartment is a space which is open to the exterior. Never cover or block up the standard forced ventilations. Otherwise gas that is emitted can not be diverted to the outside.
- ▶ The gas bottle compartment must not be used as storage space.
- ▶ Secure the gas bottle compartment against unauthorised access. To do this, lock the compartment.
- ▶ The regulator tap on the gas bottle must be accessible.
- ▶ Only connect gas-operated devices (e.g. gas grill) which have been designed for a gas pressure of 30 mbar.
- ▶ The exhaust gas pipe must be fitted tightly to the heating system and to the vent and must be sealed. The exhaust gas pipe must not show any evidence of damage.
- ▶ Exhaust fumes must be able to escape into the atmosphere unhindered and fresh air must be able to enter unhindered. For this reason, keep the exhaust pipe and intake openings clean and unobstructed (e.g. free from snow and ice). For this reason, no snow walls or aprons may lie against the vehicle.

2.5.2 Gas bottles



- ▶ Handle full or emptied gas bottles outside the vehicle only with closed regulator tap and attached protective cap.
- ▶ Gas bottles are only to be transported within the designated gas bottle compartment.
- ▶ Place the gas bottles in vertical position in the gas bottle compartment.
- ▶ Fasten the gas bottles so that they are unable to turn or tilt.



- ▶ Connect the gas tube to the gas bottle without tension.
- ▶ If the gas bottles are not connected to the gas tube, always place the protective cap on top.
- ▶ Close the regulator tap on the gas bottle before the gas pressure regulator or gas tube are removed from the gas bottle.
- ▶ Depending on the connection, unscrew the gas tube from the gas bottle and screw it on the gas bottle again by hand or using a suitable special spanner. The screw connection on the gas bottle generally has a left-hand thread. **Do not** tighten too firmly.
- ▶ Only use special gas pressure regulators with a safety valve designed for vehicle use. Other gas pressure regulators are not permitted and cannot meet the demanding requirements.
- ▶ Use only 11 kg or 5 kg gas bottles. Camping gas bottles with built-in check valve (blue bottle with max. 2.5 or 3 kg content) are can be used in exceptional cases with a safety valve.
- ▶ Use the shortest possible tube lengths (150 cm max.) for external gas bottles.
- ▶ Never block the floor ventilation openings below the gas bottles.

2.6 Electrical system



- ▶ Only allow qualified personnel to work on the electrical system.
- ▶ Prior to carrying out work on the electrical system, switch off all devices and lights, disconnect the battery and disconnect the vehicle from the mains.
- ▶ Only use original fuses with the stipulated values.
- ▶ Only replace defective fuses when the cause of the defect is known and has been remedied.
- ▶ Never bridge or repair fuses.

2.7 Water system



- ▶ Water left standing in the water tank or in the water pipes becomes undrinkable after a short period. Therefore, before each use of the vehicle, thoroughly clean the water pipes and the water tank. After each use of the vehicle completely empty the water tank and the water pipes.
- ▶ In the case of lay-ups lasting more than a week disinfect the water system before using the vehicle (see chapter 11).



- ▷ If the vehicle is not used for several days or if it is not heated when there is a risk of frost, empty the entire water system. Make certain that the water pump is switched off on the panel. Otherwise, the water pump will overheat and may get damaged. Leave the water taps on in central position. Leave the safety/drainage valve (if there is one) and all drain cocks open. Frost damage to appliances, frost damage to the vehicle and deposits in water-carrying components can be avoided in this way.

Chapter overview

This chapter contains important information which has to be noted before commencing your journey or carrying out any tasks before the journey.

At the end of the chapter there is a checklist which once again summarises the most important points.

3.1 Keys

The following keys are included with your vehicle:

Two keys for

- ignition lock
- driver's and passenger's doors
- fuel tank

Two keys for

- conversion door of the body
- drinking water filler neck
- external flaps

Always deposit a replacement key outside the vehicle. Make a note of the key number. Our authorised dealers and workshops can offer assistance in case of loss.

3.2 Registration

Your motorhome is a vehicle which must be registered. Observe national regulations on registration.

Please remember that certain countries require a separate national code sticker in addition to the EU plate.

3.3 Payload



- ▶ Overloading the vehicle and wrong tyre pressure can cause tyres to burst. You can lose control of the vehicle (see section 13.7).
- ▶ The maximum permissible gross weight and the weight including special equipment fitted at the factory (actual weight) is shown in the vehicle documents, but not the weight of the loaded vehicle (see section 3.3.1). For your own safety, we recommend that you have your loaded vehicle (with all passengers, luggage and personal objects) weighed on a public weighbridge before you set out on your journey.
- ▶ Adapt the speed to the payload. The stopping distance is increased if the payload is high.



- ▷ Do not exceed the maximum permissible gross weight (permissible total weight) stated in the vehicle documents and the maximum axle loads as a result of the payload.
- ▷ Built-in accessories and special equipment reduce the payload.
- ▷ Adhere to the axle load stated in the vehicle documents.

On loading, make sure that the payload's centre of gravity is as low as possible (directly above the floor of the vehicle). Otherwise this may affect the driving characteristics of the vehicle.

Maximum permitted payloads

Description	Load (kg)
Pull-down bed	200
Roof load	90
Rear garage and rear storage space	200
Pull-out in the rear storage space	60
Bike rack, not lowerable	Double/triple
Bike rack, lowerable	Double/triple
Load rack (SAWIKO)	130

3.3.1 Terms


- ▷ Technically speaking, the term "mass" has now replaced the term "weight". However, "weight" is still the term more frequent in common use. For better understanding, "mass" is therefore only used in the following sections for fixed formulations.

Maximum permissible gross weight in a laden condition

The maximum permissible gross weight in a laden condition is the weight that a vehicle may never exceed.

The maximum permissible gross weight in a laden condition consists of the **actual weight** and the **payload**.

In the vehicle documents, the manufacturer has specified the maximum permissible gross weight in a laden condition.

Actual weight

The actual weight consists of the mass in ready-to-drive condition and the weight of the special equipment fitted at the factory.

Mass in ready-to-drive condition

The mass in ready-to-drive condition is the weight of the ready-to-drive standard vehicle (excluding special equipment fitted at the factory).

The mass in ready-to-drive condition is made up as follows:

- Unladen weight (mass of the empty vehicle) with factory-installed standard equipment (excluding special equipment fitted at the factory)
- Driver's weight
- Basic equipment weight

Unladen weight includes lubricants such as oils and coolants which have been filled, the on-board tool set and a fuel tank which has been filled up to 90 %.

75 kg are calculated for the weight of the driver, regardless of how much the driver really weighs.

Basic equipment includes all equipment and fluids required for safe and proper vehicle use. The weight of the basic equipment includes:

- A full fresh water system
- A gas bottle filled up to 90 %
- A full heating system
- The power cables for the 230 V power supply
- A full toilet flushing system
- The installation kit for an auxiliary battery if an auxiliary battery can be used

The waste water and sewage tanks are empty.

Example for calculating the basic equipment

Water tank in the ready-to-drive state with 20 l (overflow open)	20 kg
Aluminium gas bottle	+ 11.5 kg
Boiler with 20 l	+ 20 kg
230 V power cable	+ 4 kg
Total	= 55.5 kg

The mass in ready-to-drive condition and the actual weight are shown in the vehicle documents (e.g. 2900/2950 kg).

Payload

The payload is made up as follows:

- Conventional load
- Additional equipment
- Personal equipment



▷ The vehicle's payload can be increased by reducing the actual weight. To do this, it is allowed for example to empty the fluid containers or to remove the gas bottles.

You will find explanations on the individual components of the payload in the following text.

Conventional load

The conventional load is the weight specified by the manufacturer for the passengers.

Conventional load means: 75 kg are calculated for every seat specified by the manufacturer, regardless of how much the passengers actually weigh. The driver's seat is already included as part of the mass in ready-to-drive condition and must **not** be calculated as part of the conventional load.

In the vehicle documents, the manufacturer specifies the number of seats.

Additional equipment

Additional equipment includes accessories and special equipment. Examples of additional equipment include:

- Caravan coupling
- Roof rail
- Awning
- Bike or motorcycle rack
- Satellite unit
- Microwave oven

Chapter 15 lists the weights of the various items of special equipment; they may also be obtained from the manufacturer.

Personal equipment

Personal equipment includes all items in the vehicle that are not included in the conventional load or in the additional equipment. For example, personal equipment can include the following:

- Foodstuffs
- Crockery
- Television
- Radio
- Clothes
- Bedding
- Toys
- Books
- Toiletries

No matter where kept, personal equipment also includes:

- Animals
- Bikes
- Boats
- Surfboards
- Sports equipment

For the personal equipment, according to the applicable regulations, the manufacturer must use a minimum weight that is determined according to the following formula:

Formula Minimum weight M (kg) = 10 x N + 10 x L

Explanation N = maximum number of people including the driver, as stated by the manufacturer
L = total length of the vehicle in metres

3.3.2 Calculating the payload



- ▶ The payload calculation at the factory is partly based on all-inclusive weights. For safety reasons, the maximum permissible gross weight in a laden condition must not be exceeded.
- ▶ The maximum permissible gross weight and the weight including special equipment fitted at the factory (actual weight) is shown in the vehicle documents, but not the weight of the loaded vehicle (see section 3.3.1). For your own safety, we recommend that you have your loaded vehicle (with all passengers, luggage and personal objects) weighed on a public weighbridge before you set out on your journey.

The payload (see section 3.3.1) is the difference in weight between

- the maximum permissible gross weight in a laden condition and
- the actual weight.

Example for calculating the payload

	Mass in kg to be calculated	Calculation
Maximum permissible gross weight according to vehicle documents	3500	
Actual weight including basic equipment according to vehicle documents	- 3070	
This results in a permissible payload of	430	

The calculation of the payload from the difference between the maximum permissible gross weight in laden condition and the actual weight specified by the manufacturer is however only a theoretical value.

Only if the vehicle is weighed with full tanks (fuel and water), full gas bottles and complete additional equipment on a public weighbridge, can the actual payload be determined.

To do this, proceed as follows:

- First only drive the vehicle on to the weighbridge with the front wheels and have it weighed.
- Then drive the vehicle on to the weighbridge with the back wheels and have it weighed.

The individual values give the current axle loads. These are important for the correct loading of the vehicle (see section 3.3.3). The sum of these values is the current weight of the vehicle.

The actual payload is the difference between the maximum permissible gross weight in laden condition and the weighed vehicle weight.

This can be used to determine the weight that remains for the personal equipment:

- Determine the weight of the passengers and subtract it from the value for the actual payload.

The result is the weight that is permitted for the actual load of the personal equipment.

3.3.3 Loading the vehicle correctly



- ▶ For safety reasons, never exceed the maximum permissible gross weight in a laden condition.
- ▶ Distribute the load evenly on the left and right sides of the vehicle.
- ▶ Distribute the load evenly on both axles. In doing so, observe the axle loads specified in the vehicle documents. Observe the permissible load-carrying capacity of the tyres (see chapter 13).
- ▶ Heavy loads behind the rear axle can reduce the load on the front axle due to the leverage effect ($\frac{L}{L_0} \cdot \frac{G}{G_0}$). This applies especially to long rear extensions, if a motorbike is transported on the rear carrier or if there is a heavy load in the rear storage space. The release of the front axle negatively affects the driving quality, especially for front-driven vehicles.
- ▶ Store all objects in such a way that they cannot slip.
- ▶ Store heavy objects (awning, tin cans, etc.) close to the axles. Low-lying storage spaces whose doors do not open in the direction of travel are particularly suited for storing heavy objects.
- ▶ Stack light objects (laundry) in the roof storage cabinets.
- ▶ Load the bike rack with bicycles only (max. three units).

Large storage spaces, such as the rear garage, also have room for heavy objects (e.g. motorcycle). This might mean that the axle load on the rear axle is exceeded.

However, the individual axles may not be overloaded under any circumstances. That is why it is important, at which distance to the axles the load is stored.

To distribute the load correctly, you will need a scale, a tape measure, a calculator and some time.

Two simple formulas are needed to calculate the effect of the weight of the load on the axles:

Formulas

$A \times G : R =$ weight on the rear axle

Weight on the rear axle – $G =$ weight on the front axle

Explanation

A = distance between storage space and front axle in cm

G = weight of the load in the storage space in kg

R = wheelbase of the vehicle (distance between axles) in cm



- ▷ Measure the external distances horizontally from the centre of the front wheel to the centre of the storage space or to the centre of the back wheel.

Calculating axle loads:

- Multiply the distance between storage space and front axle (A) with the weight of the load in the storage space (G) and divide the result by the wheelbase (R). The result is the weight of the load in the storage space on the rear axle. Make a note of this weight and of the storage space.
- In a second step, subtract the weight in the storage space (G) from the weight calculated beforehand. If the result is a **positive** value (example 1), this means that the load on the front axle is **reduced** by this value. If the result is a **negative** value (example 2), this means that the load on the front axle is **increased**. Make a note of this value, too.
- Calculate all storage spaces of the vehicle in the same way.
- In a last step, add all weights calculated for the rear axle to the rear axle load and add (or subtract) all weights calculated for the front axle to (from) the front axle load.
How to determine rear axle load and front axle load is described in section 3.3.2.

If the calculated value exceeds the permissible axle load, the load must be distributed in a different way.

If the load on the front axle is too low, the grip of the tyres on the road is reduced (traction), as is the vehicle's steerability. This applies in particular to vehicles with front-wheel drive. In this case, the load must be redistributed, too.

Example calculation

		Example 1	Example 2
Distance to the front axle	A	(A1) 450 (cm)	(A2) 250 (cm)
Weight in the storage space	G	x 100 (kg)	x 50 (kg)
Wheelbase of the vehicle	R	÷ 325 (cm)	÷ 325 (cm)
Load on the rear axle (add to the axle load)		138.5 (kg)	38.5 (kg)
Weight in the storage space		- 100 (kg)	- 50 (kg)
Load relief to the front axle (subtract from the axle load)		38.5 (kg)	
Load on the front axle (add to the axle load)			-11.5 (kg)

3.3.4 Rear garage/rear storage space



- ▶ Do not use storage spaces or rear garages as places for people or animals to stay or sleep in. These spaces are not forced-air ventilated. There is a danger of suffocation due to oxygen deprivation or exhaust from the heater.
- ▶ Observe the permissible axle loads and maximum permissible gross weight when loading the rear garage/the rear storage space.
- ▶ The maximum permitted load of the rear garage/the rear storage space is 200 kg. Do not exceed the permissible rear axle load.
- ▶ Observe: If the rear garage or (depending on the model) the rear storage space is **loaded** to its maximum capacity, this will **reduce the load** on the front axle due to the levering action. The driving quality is impaired.



- ▷ Depending on the vehicle equipment, clamping rails with clamping eyelets are mounted in the rear garage or in the rear storage space. Always secure loads onto the clamping eyelets. Always use tightening straps or lashing nets for securing the load, never rubber expanders.
- ▷ When clamping loads, always check that the clamping eyelets are placed tightly in the clamping rails. If the clamping eyelet is not anchored tightly in the clamping rail, the load may slide or loosen during forcible movements of the steering wheel or when braking.
- ▷ Distribute the load evenly. Excessive spot loads can lead to damages of the floor covering.
- ▷ If there is a pull-out present in the rear storage space: make sure that the pull-out is engaged.
- ▷ Use the supporting system offered by your dealer if two-wheelers are transported in the rear garage.

3.3.5 Bike rack (special equipment)



- ▶ Observe the permissible axle loads and maximum permissible gross weight when loading the bike rack.
- ▶ A total width of 2.55 m must not be exceeded. Adjust the attachments for the bikes accordingly. The overhang to the side and rear must be marked in accordance with the regulations for the country in which you are travelling.
- ▶ Load the bike rack with bicycles only (max. three units).
- ▶ Fasten bicycles using the straps provided and check to see that they are secure after you have driven a few kilometres.
- ▶ Check the secure attachment of the bicycles on the bike rack after the first 10 km and then at each break in the journey.
- ▶ Do not use the bike rack as luggage rack or ladder.



- ▷ The bike rack is only to be used for transporting bicycles.
- ▷ The gross weight specified by the manufacturer must not be exceeded.
- ▷ The identification plate and rear lights must not be covered.
- ▷ The maximum permissible payload of the bike rack is 60 kg.
- ▷ When loading the bike rack, observe the centre of gravity. If the bike rack is only loaded with **one** bicycle, position the bicycle as closely as possible to the vehicle wall.
- ▷ Driving with a folded out bike rack without bicycles is not permitted.
- ▷ Before every journey, check:
 - Is the bike rack without bicycles folded in correctly?
 - Are the bicycles securely fastened to the bike rack using the bike rack belts?

Loading the bike rack with bicycles

When loading the bike rack, observe the centre of gravity. The centre of gravity of the bicycles must be as close as possible to the rear wall of the vehicle. The bike rack should always be loaded from the inside to the outside.

Loading the bike rack correctly:

- Depending on the model, fold the bike rack down or pull it out.
- Place the heaviest bicycle directly against the rear wall.
- Place the lightest bicycles in the centre or on the outside of the bike rack.
- Secure the front and rear wheels of each bicycle with the retaining straps on the bike rack.
- In addition, fasten the outermost bicycle depending on the model of the bike rack on the retaining clip or the retaining bracket and to the spacer respectively.

If the bike rack is only loaded with **one** bicycle, position the bicycle as closely as possible to the rear wall.

Bike rack, not lowerable



- ▷ Also read the manufacturer's instruction manual.



Fig. 1 Bike rack, not lowerable

Depending on the model, the bike rack can be used to transport 2 or 3 bicycles comfortably.

Loading the bicycles:

- Fold the swivel clip down.
- Place the bicycles on top and secure them with quick straps.
- Fasten the spacer to the frame of the outermost bicycle.

Bike rack, lowerable


- ▷ Also read the manufacturer's instruction manual.

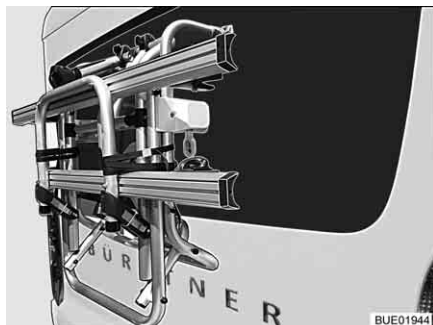


Fig. 2 Bike rack, folded upwards

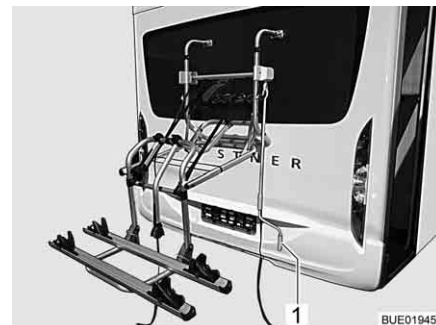


Fig. 3 Bike rack, lowered

The bike rack (Fig. 2) permits to easily transport 2 bicycles. Expansion for 3 bicycles is possible. A winding system can be used to lift and lower the bike rack. The winding system brings the bicycles to gripping height within seconds.

Loading the bicycles:

- Attach the hand crank (Fig. 3,1) to the bike rack and lower the bike rack to gripping height.
- Place the bicycles on top and secure them with quick straps.
- Fasten the bike-block spacer to the frame of the outermost bicycle.
- Use the hand crank to raise the bike rack again.

3.3.6 Load rack SAWIKO (special equipment)


- ▶ Do not exceed the rear axle load.
- ▶ Heavy loads behind the rear axle can reduce the load on the front axle due to the leverage effect ($\frac{L}{L_0}$). This applies especially to long rear extensions, if a motorbike is transported on the rear carrier or if there is a heavy load in the rear storage space. The release of the front axle negatively affects the driving quality, especially for front-driven vehicles.
- ▶ Always make sure to store the load roadworthy and secure it against falling.
- ▶ The load may not jut out beyond the maximum width of the vehicle. The lighting and the official licence plate on the load rack may not be covered by the load.



- ▷ The load rack and caravan coupling must not be used simultaneously.



- ▷ An entry must be made in the vehicle documents in order to attach a load rack. The required documents are enclosed with the load rack.
- ▷ Have your dealer or service centre install the load rack.
- ▷ Observe the country-specific regulations.
- ▷ Also read the manufacturer's instruction manual.

The load rack permits transport of a load weighing up to 130 kg. For the transport of the load different attachments are available. They are e.g. bike rack or a transport box. Our authorised dealers and service centres will be happy to advise you.

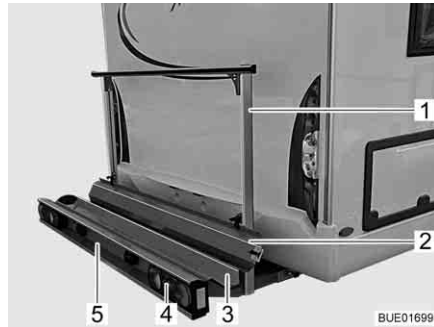


Fig. 4 Load rack

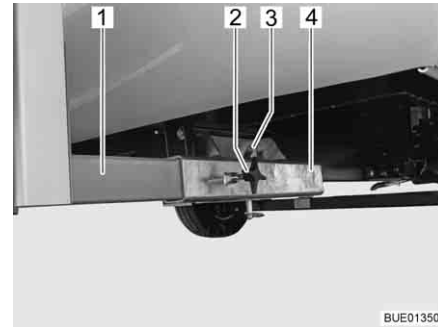


Fig. 5 Attachment to vehicle

The load rack (Fig. 4) permits transport of a motorcycle or a motor scooter weighing up to 130 kg.

Scope of delivery

The following parts belong to the scope of delivery:

- Rack trough (Fig. 4,3) and retaining clip (Fig. 4,1) with attachment to vehicle (Fig. 5)
- Rear lights (Fig. 4,4)
- Vehicle licence plate light (Fig. 4,5)
- 13-pole Jäger System plug
- Ramp (Fig. 4,2)

Attachment to vehicle

The two side members (Fig. 5,1) of the load rack are fixed to the floor of the vehicle by means of tommy screws (Fig. 5,2) on the square drives (Fig. 5,4). The load rack is secured by a bolt (Fig. 5,3) with locking ring.

Entry in the vehicle documents

Have your dealer or service centre install the add-on parts. They will also take care of all the formalities for you.

3.4 Towing



- ▶ Care is to be taken when connecting and detaching a trailer. Risk of accident and injury!
- ▶ No persons are to be between the towing vehicle and the trailer during positioning for connecting and detaching.
- ▶ Observe the permissible nose weight and rear axle load of the motorhome. Refer to the vehicle documents for the rear axle load.



- ▷ Trailer with an overrun brake: Do not connect or detach trailer with the overrun brake on.
- ▷ Caravan coupling with detachable ball neck: If the ball neck is mounted incorrectly, there is the danger of the trailer breaking away. Observe the instruction manual for the caravan coupling.
- ▷ The tow ball only fits onto the supplied mount. If the tow ball must be replaced, the mount must also be replaced.
- ▷ If the vehicle is equipped with air suspension: the distance between the tow ball of the caravan coupling and the road must be 350 to 420 mm in loaded condition.

Depending on the model, different nose weights may apply for the caravan couplings. Refer to the following table for the respective permissible nose weight.

Model	Permissible nose weight
SAWIKO MT019	75 kg
SAWIKO (other)	100 kg
Linnepe	100 kg
AL-KO	80 kg

3.5 Caravan coupling (special equipment)



- ▶ When mounting a caravan coupling, see the vehicle documents for information on maximum nose weight and caravan load.
- ▶ Retighten the caravan coupling fixing screws after 1000 operating hours.



- ▷ The load rack and caravan coupling must not be used simultaneously.



- ▷ If the caravan coupling is retrofitted, this must be entered in the vehicle documents. The required documents are enclosed with the caravan coupling.
- ▷ If the caravan coupling was fitted at the factory, this is entered in the vehicle documents. Always keep the appropriate documents in the vehicle.
- ▷ Also read the manufacturer's instruction manual.



Fig. 6 Caravan coupling, rigid



Fig. 7 Caravan coupling, detachable

Entry in the vehicle documents

Have your dealer or service centre install the add-on parts. They will also take care of all the formalities for you.

3.6 Electrically operated entrance step (partially special equipment)



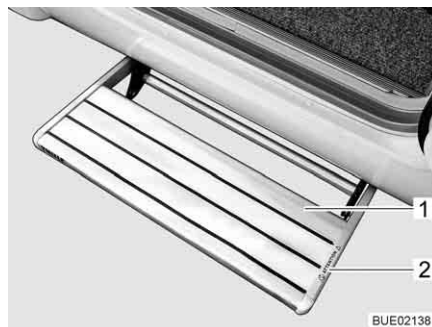
- ▶ Before commencing the journey and after short interruptions of the journey, ensure that the entrance step is completely retracted.
- ▶ Do not stand in the direct range of the entrance step while it is being retracted or extended.
- ▶ Do not step on the entrance step until it has extended completely. There is a risk of injury.
- ▶ Do not under any circumstances raise or lower persons or loads with the entrance step.



- ▷ Take note of the different step heights and make certain that the ground is firm and even when exiting.
- ▷ Do not grease or lubricate the pivot bearing and joints of the entrance step (see chapter 11).



- ▷ The button to operate the entrance step is located on the inside of the vehicle in the area of the conversion door.
- ▷ If the entrance step has not been retracted correctly, a red indicator lamp lights up on the dashboard when switching on the ignition.
- ▷ Follow the warning notice on the entrance step.



- 1 Entrance step
- 2 "Risk of crushing" warning notice

Fig. 8 Entrance step

The vehicles have a one-step, electrically extendable entrance step (Fig. 8, 1).

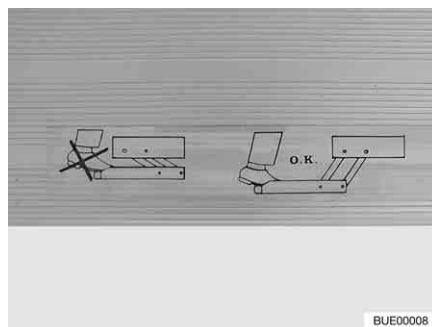


Fig. 9 Warning notice for entrance step

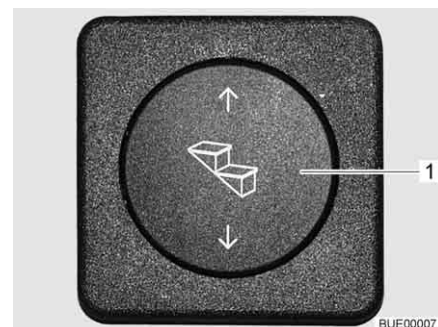


Fig. 10 Operating button for entrance step

Before stepping on the entrance step, fully extend it (Fig. 9).

- Extending:**
- Press the rocker button (Fig. 10,1) down and hold it pressed (at least 3 seconds) until the entrance step has extended completely.

- Retracting:*
- Press the rocker button (Fig. 10,1) up until the entrance step has retracted completely.

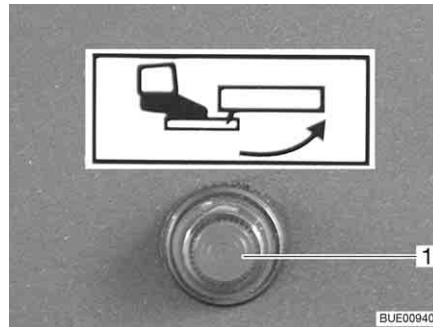


Fig. 11 Indicator lamp

When the ignition is switched on and the entrance step is extended, an indicator lamp (Fig. 11,1) is illuminated on the dashboard.

3.7 TV unit (special equipment)



- ▶ Before commencing the journey, place and secure the flat screen and screen support in the initial position. If the screen holder is installed in a TV cabinet: Close TV cabinet.
- ▶ Before commencing the journey, ensure that the antenna is in park position. Danger of accidents! Park position means: The antenna points towards the back, is fully lowered and is locked in this position.



- ▷ Further information on positioning the flat screen can be obtained from chapter 6.

3.8 Sink and drain basic covers (partially special equipment)



- ▶ In the event of an accident or emergency braking, the loose sink (Fig. 12,1) and drain basin covers could injure the occupants of the vehicle. Before commencing the journey, take the loose covers off and store them securely in the kitchen unit or wardrobe.



Fig. 12 Sink cover (example)

3.9 Securing add-on parts



- ▶ In the event of an accident or emergency braking, loose add-on parts could injure the occupants of the vehicle. Before setting off, secure loose add-on parts in the holders provided or stow them in a secure place inside the vehicle.



- ▷ Unsecured flaps and doors can spring open during the journey and damage parts of the interior. Secure all flaps and doors before setting off.

Add-on parts

Add-on parts include bed widenings, ladders or table extensions.



Fig. 13 Bed widening in the rear garage



Fig. 14 Access ladder in the wardrobe

Securing add-on parts:

- Place the add-on parts (Fig. 13,1 and Fig. 14,1) in the holders provided and secure them with the available means of attachment.
- If no holder is provided for the add-on part, stow the add-on part in a storage space the doors of which cannot be opened in the direction of travel (e.g. wardrobe or rear storage space).

Doors and flaps

Doors are, for example, inner doors or partition walls. See section 6.4 for furniture flaps.

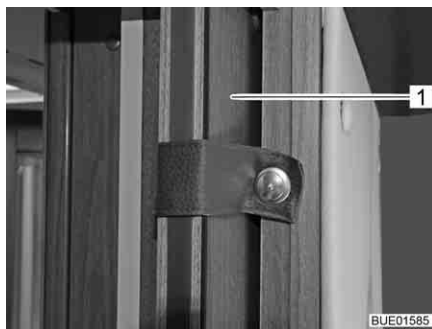


Fig. 15 Sliding door



Fig. 16 Shower partition

Securing doors:

- Secure doors (Fig. 15,1) or partition walls (Fig. 16,1) with the locks or means of securing provided.

Coffee table of the rear seating group

A movable coffee table is installed in the seat box of the rear seating group.



Fig. 17 Bench and coffee table

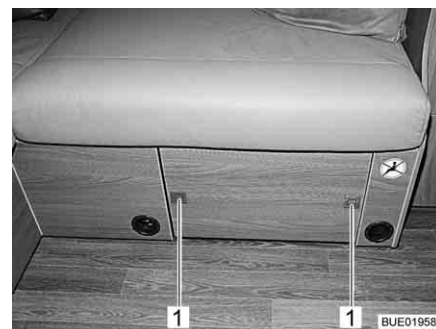


Fig. 18 Coffee table lock

Securing the coffee table:

- Lower the coffee table.
- Run the coffee table into the seat box.
- Press the push buttons (Fig. 18,1) on the seat box panel. The coffee table is secured.

3.10 Gas regulator



- ▶ Operating gas-operated appliances during the journey is permitted only if the gas system has the relevant equipment. The hose break guard and crash protection unit (CPU) prevent the gas from escaping in the event of an accident.

Depending on the equipment, different gas regulators can be installed in the vehicle.

If a gas regulator other than the one listed below is installed in the vehicle, the regulator tap on the gas bottle and the gas isolator taps must be closed during the journey.

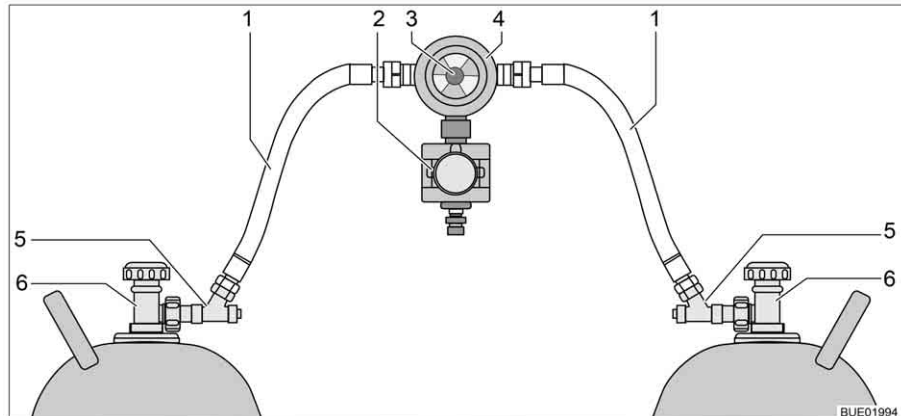


Fig. 19 Gas regulator with CPU and hose break guard

- 1 Gas tube
- 2 Crash protection unit (CPU)
- 3 Knob for manual switching of the gas bottles
- 4 Gas pressure regulator with reversing valve and indicator
- 5 Hose break guard
- 6 Regulator tap on the gas bottle

Gas regulator with CPU and hose break guard

If a gas regulator with crash protection unit (Fig. 19,2) and hose break guard (Fig. 19,5) is installed in the vehicle:

The regulator tap on the gas bottle and the gas isolator taps may remain open during the journey. Gas-operated appliances may be on during the journey.



- ▷ If in doubt, get the relevant information from authorised dealers or service centres.

3.11 Snow chains (special equipment)



- ▷ Only mount snow chains if there is a clearance of at least 50 mm between the tyres and the vehicle body.
- ▷ When using snow chains, the tyres, wheel suspension and steering are subjected to an additional load. When using snow chains, drive slowly (maximum speed 50 km/h) and only on streets which are completely covered with snow. Otherwise the vehicle could be damaged.
- ▷ Observe the fitting instructions issued by the manufacturer of the snow chains.
- ▷ Do not fit snow chains on alloy wheel rims.

Only use suitable snow chains:

Tyre size	Snow chain size
215/70 R 15 C	230
225/75 R 16 C	245

The use of snow chains is subject to the legal regulations of the individual countries.

- Always mount snow chains to the drive wheels.
- After a few metres, check the tension of the snow chains.

3.12 Road safety



► Check tyre pressure before a journey or every 2 weeks. Wrong tyre pressure causes excessive wear and can lead to damage or even to tyre burst. You can lose control of the vehicle (see section 13.7).

Before commencing the journey, work through the checklist:

Base vehicle

No.	Checks	Checked
1	All vehicle documents are on board	
2	Tyres in proper condition and tyre pressure correct	
3	Vehicle lighting, brake lights and reversing lights function	
4	Oil levels for engine, gearbox and power steering controlled	
5	Coolant and fluid for windscreen washers filled up	
6	Brakes function	
7	Brakes react evenly	
8	When braking, the vehicle remains in the lane	

Housing body, outside

9	Awning completely retracted	
10	Roof free of snow and ice (in winter)	
11	External connections and lines disconnected and stored away	
12	External supports removed	
13	Fitted supports retracted and fixed in place	
14	Wheel chocks removed and stored away	
15	Entrance step is stored securely or retracted	
16	External flaps closed and locked	
17	Conversion door locked	
18	Overall height of the vehicle including roof rack when loaded measured and noted. Keep the height information close at hand in the driver's cabin	

Housing body, inside


19	Windows and skylights closed and locked	
20	Flat screen secured	
21	Satellite antenna retracted (if built in)	
22	Loose parts and add-on parts stored away or fixed in position	
23	Open storage spaces empty	
24	Store sink and drain basin covers securely	
25	Refrigerator door secured	
26	Refrigerator set to 12 V operation (only required in case of manual power selection)	
27	All drawers and flaps closed	

No.	Checks	Checked
28	All doors secured	
29	Pull-down bed secured in top end position	
30	Children's seats mounted to seats with three-point safety belts	
31	Swivel seat locking device for driver's seat and front passenger's seat locked	
32	Shades in the driver's cabin opened and secured	

Gas system

33	Gas bottles firmly fixed in the gas bottle compartment so that they are unable to turn	
34	If the gas bottles are not connected to the gas tube, always place the protective cap on top	
35	If there is no supplied crash protection unit: Regulator tap on the gas bottle and gas isolator taps are closed	

Electrical system

36	<p>Check the battery voltage of the starter and living area battery (see chapter 8). If the panel indicates that the battery voltage is too low, the respective battery will need to be recharged. Observe the notes and instructions in chapter 8</p> <p> ▷ Commence journey with fully charged starter and living area batteries.</p>	
----	--	--

Chapter overview

This chapter contains instructions on how to drive the motorhome.

4.1 Driving the motorhome



- ▶ The base vehicle is a commercial vehicle (small truck). Adjust your driving technique accordingly.
- ▶ Before commencing the journey and after short interruptions of the journey, ensure that the entrance step is completely retracted.
- ▶ A seat belt is fitted for each seat which is permitted for travel. Please keep your seat belt fastened during the journey.
- ▶ Never open your seat belts when travelling.
- ▶ Passengers must remain in the seats provided.
- ▶ The doors must remain locked.
- ▶ Avoid braking with a jerk.
- ▶ If a navigation system is used, only change the destination when the vehicle is stationary. Drive to a car park or stop in a safe area when changing the destination.
- ▶ Do not play DVDs using the monitor of the navigation system during the journey.
- ▶ Always switch off outdoor light/awning light during the journey.



- ▷ Drive slowly on poor roads.
- ▷ Take extreme care when driving onto ferries, crossing uneven roads and driving in reverse. Because of the relatively large overhang, larger vehicles might swing out and "touch ground" in unfavourable conditions. This can cause damage to the underbody or to parts fitted there.



- ▷ If an accident occurs as a result of these instructions not being observed, the manufacturer will not be responsible for damages caused.
- ▷ The safety measures stipulated in chapter 2 have to be observed.
- ▷ If a reversing camera is installed in the vehicle, the camera is automatically switched on when driving in reverse gear.

4.2 Reversing camera (special equipment)



Fig. 20 Reversing camera with infrared illumination

A reversing camera (Fig. 20) is installed in the vehicle.

When it is dark, the infrared LEDs of the reversing camera illuminate the field of view.

The image of the reversing camera is fed into the central multimedia/navigation system and shown on the existent LCD monitor.

If the engine is running or the ignition is switched on, the reversing camera and LCD monitor switch themselves on automatically when you engage reverse.

If the engine is running or the ignition is switched on, the reversing camera and LCD monitor can also be switched on manually via a pushbutton or a switch on the display.

The system can be switched off via an operating button or via a button on the display.



- ▷ Further information can be obtained in the manufacturer's instruction manual.

4.3 Driving speed



- ▶ The vehicle is equipped with a powerful engine. This means there are sufficient reserves in difficult traffic situations. This high power enables a high maximum speed and requires above-average driving ability.
- ▶ The vehicle provides a large contact surface for wind. A sudden cross-wind can be especially dangerous.
- ▶ Uneven or one-sided loading affects road performance.
- ▶ Driving on unknown streets, you may encounter hazardous road conditions and unexpected driving situations. Therefore, in the interest of safety, make sure your driving speed is appropriate to any given driving situation and environment.
- ▶ Adhere to the national legal speed limits.

4.4 Brakes



- ▶ Have defects on the braking system immediately remedied by an authorised specialist workshop.

Before each journey

Before each journey, check by means of a braking test:

- Do the brakes function?
- Do the brakes react evenly?
- Does the vehicle remain in the lane when braking?

4.5 Air suspension Goldschmitt (special equipment)



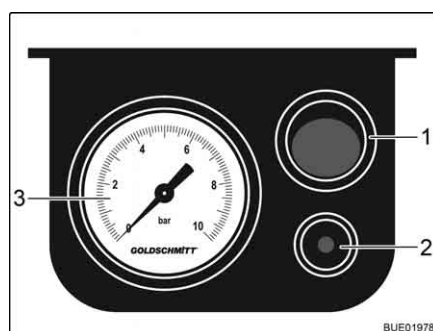
- ▶ Make sure that no persons are staying underneath the vehicle or between the wheels when the vehicle is lowered.



- ▷ Do not overload the vehicle (do not exceed the axle load nor the permissible gross weight).
- ▷ Make sure that it is possible to lower the vehicle can be freely even after a longer stationary period.
- ▷ Before setting of, check the system pressure at the pressure gauge. The system pressure shall be within a range from 1 to 6 bar. If required, increase the pressure or decrease the pressure.
- ▷ When using snow chains: make sure that there is sufficient free space for the snow chains.

1-circuit system

In addition to the standard equipment of the vehicle with steel springs, two bellows are installed on the rear axle. With that, the vehicle can be lifted several centimetres.



- 1 On/Off button
- 2 Bleeding pin
- 3 Pressure gauge

Fig. 21 Electrical control unit

Raising the vehicle:

- Press On/Off button (Fig. 21,1) on the electrical control unit. Fill the system with an external compressor through a valve (on the left side of the left-hand vehicle seat console).

Lowering the vehicle:

- Release the pressure. In order to do this, press the bleeding pin (Fig. 21,2) on the electrical control unit.



- ▷ Distribute the load evenly on the bellows because otherwise tensions may occur on the body. Tensions may hinder opening and closing the doors and flaps.
- ▷ Also read the manufacturer's instruction manual.

4.6 Seat belts

4.6.1 General

The vehicle is equipped with seat belts in the living area on the seats for which seat belts are compulsory by law. National regulations apply seat-belt fastening.



- ▶ Fasten your seat belts before the beginning of the journey and keep them fastened during the journey.
- ▶ Do not damage or trap belts. Have damaged seat belts changed by an authorised specialist workshop.
- ▶ Do not alter the belt fixing devices, automatic seat belt winders and the belt clips.
- ▶ Only use one seat belt for **one** adult person.
- ▶ Do not belt in objects together with persons.
- ▶ Seat belts are not sufficient for persons who are less than 150 cm tall. In these cases use additional restraining devices. Observe test certificate.
- ▶ Only attach the child restraint system to seats that are specified for this purpose.
- ▶ After an accident, replace the seat belts.
- ▶ During the journey, do not tilt the backrest too far backwards. Otherwise the functionality of the seat belt is no longer guaranteed.

4.6.2 Fastening the seat belt correctly



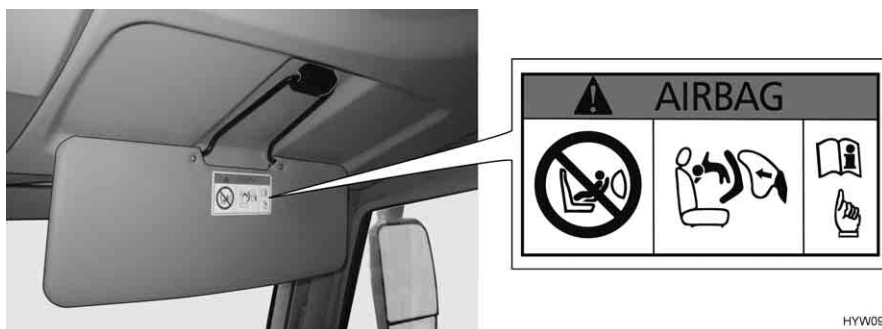
- ▶ Do not twist the belt. The belt must be positioned smoothly against the body.
- ▶ When fastening the seat belt, adopt the correct sitting position.

The seat belt is correctly fastened when the lap belt passes below your stomach and across the hip bone. The shoulder belt must pass across the chest and shoulder (not across your neck). The belt must always be taut against your body. Any bulky or padded clothing should therefore be removed before you start your journey.

4.7 Child restraint systems



- ▶ When travelling, secure children under 13 years of age that are smaller than 150 cm, with a suitable and officially approved child restraint system.
- ▶ Only attach the child restraint system to seats that are specified for this purpose. We strongly recommend to install child restraint systems preferably in the second row of seats.
- ▶ Fasten the childrens' seat belts before commencing the journey and make sure that their seat belts are kept fastened during the journey.
- ▶ Use a rear-facing child restraint system ("reboard system") only when the front and side air bags on the passenger side are switched off. Observe the separate operating instructions of the chassis manufacturer and the warning notices in the vehicle. If no rear-facing child restraint system is in use, switch the airbags back on again.
- ▶ Never use rearward-facing child restraint system on a seat with activated front airbag. This may lead to death or to serious injuries in children.



HYW09354

Fig. 22 Warning notice on child restraint system (front passenger's seat sun visor)

Rearward-facing child restraint systems on the front passenger's seat

The front passenger's seat is equipped with an airbag. When this airbag is activated, it is not permitted to use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat. In the event of an accident, the triggered airbag may cause serious injuries in the child or to its death. A warning notice (Fig. 22) depicting this hazard is attached to both sides of the sun visor.

The airbag of the front passenger's seat can be deactivated. Refer to the instruction manual of the base vehicle for instructions.

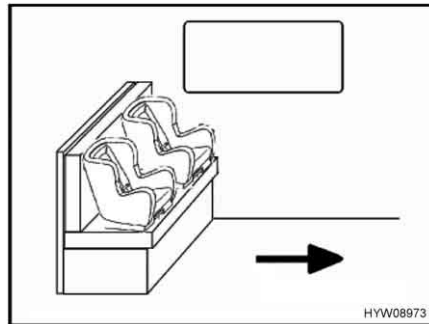


Fig. 23 Child seats on bench

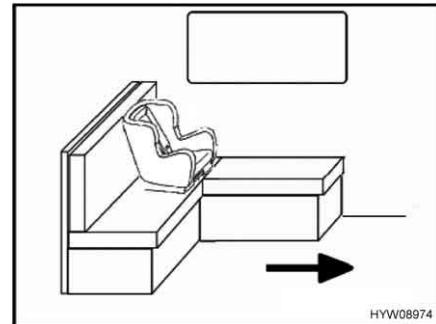


Fig. 24 Child seat on L-shaped bench

The arrow in Fig. 23 and Fig. 24 shows the direction of travel.

On the L-shaped bench, the back cushion on the side wall must be removed when a child seat is fitted.

Child restraint systems are divided into five classes:

Class	Body weight	Approximate age
0	Up to 10 kg	Up to 9 months
0+	Up to 13 kg	Up to 18 months
I	9 kg to 18 kg	9 months to 4 years
II	15 kg to 25 kg	3 years to 7 ½ years
III	22 kg to 36 kg	6 years to 12 years

The following table shows, which child restraint systems can be used on which seats.

Seats	Age groups			
	< 10 kg (0-9 months)	< 13 kg (0-24 months)	9-18 kg (9-48 months)	15-36 kg (4-12 years)
Front passenger's seat	X	U ¹⁾	U ¹⁾	U ¹⁾
Bench Fig. 23	U ²⁾	U	U	U
L-shaped bench Fig. 24	U ^{2) 3)}	U ³⁾	U ³⁾	U ³⁾

Here, the following meanings apply:

U: Suitable for "universal" restraint systems which are authorised for this age group.

X: Seat is not suitable for children in this age group.

- 1) This only applies without airbag or with deactivated airbag.
- 2) Only possible in the respective seat if the distance between the seat and the table is large enough or if the table has been removed.
- 3) Back cushion on side wall removed.

4.8 ISOFIX child safety seat mounting system (special equipment)

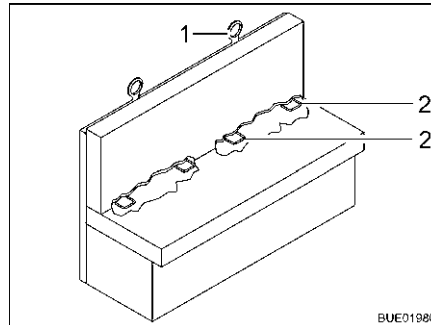


Fig. 25 ISOFIX child safety seat mounting system

If the vehicle is equipped with the ISOFIX child safety seat mounting system, the vehicle seats suitable for it are marked with the ISOFIX symbol. These vehicle seats have retaining brackets (Fig. 25,2) and another anchorage point at the top of the seat backrest (Top Tether) (Fig. 25,1). Use child restraint system suitable for ISOFIX. The child restraint systems possess connectors which are latched to the retaining brackets of the vehicle seat.

The bench with the special equipment ISOFIX child safety seat mounting system is suitable for child seats with ISOFIX system, which are specially authorised for this vehicle type according to the standard ECE-R 44.

Child restraint systems of the groups 0, 0+, and 1 with ISOFIX child safety seat mounting system can be fastened at the ISOFIX anchorage points on the bench.

Fastening a child seat

- Push the connectors of the child seat into the ISOFIX anchorage points until they engage audibly.
 - By pulling the child seat, check whether both sides have engaged correctly.
 - If possible, fasten the child seat at the Top Tether (Fig. 25,1).
- ▷ Also observe the instruction manual of the child restraint system manufacturer.



4.9 Pilot seats for the driver's and front passenger's seats



- ▶ Before commencing the journey, rotate all swivel seats in the direction of travel and lock in position.
- ▶ The seats must remain fixed in position during the journey and are not to be rotated.



- ▷ Before rotating the seats in the pitched vehicle, always apply the hand-brake.
- ▷ Push the driver's seat into the central position before rotating it. If the driver's seat is in the very back or in the very front, there is a risk of colliding with the handbrake lever or the seating group when rotating the driver's seat.



- ▷ The driver's seat and the front passenger's seat are part of the base vehicle. The adjustment of the seats is described in the instruction manual of the base vehicle.
- ▷ The possibilities of seat adjustment differ according to the model and equipment variants.

4.10 Seat heater (special equipment)



- ▷ The seat heater only works when the ignition is switched on.

Depending on equipment levels, the driver's seat and the front passenger's seat may have a 2-level seat heater.



Fig. 26 Switch for seat heater

Switching on the seat heater:

- Press the switch (Fig. 26,1) at the back on the left side of the seat console.
 - For minimal heating: Press the switch so that it is in the down position.
 - For the highest heat level: Press the switch so that it is in the up position.

The LED (Fig. 26,2) comes on when the seat heater is in use.

Switching off the seat heater:

- Set switch (Fig. 26,1) to the middle position. The LED goes out.

4.11 Headrests

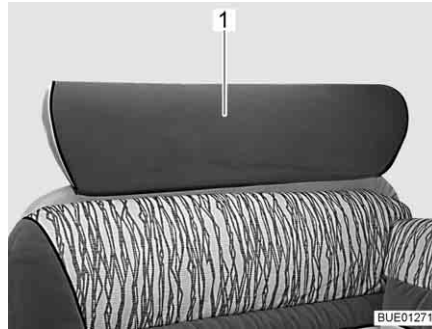


Fig. 27 Bench headrest, one-part

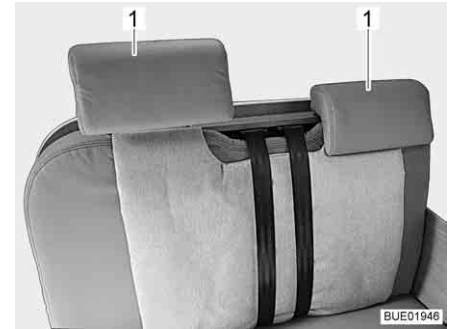


Fig. 28 Bench headrest, two-part

Before commencing the journey, adjust the headrest (Fig. 27,1 or Fig. 28,1) so that the back of the head is supported at approximately ear height.

Push the headrests upwards or downwards by hand.

4.12 Seating arrangement



- ▶ During the journey, persons are only to sit on the permitted seats. The authorised number of seats is stipulated in the vehicle documents.
- ▶ During the journey sitting on the divans is not permitted.
- ▶ Seat belts must be worn by all passengers.



Fig. 29 Symbol "Do not use seat during the journey"

Seats which may not be used during the journey are equipped with a sticker (Fig. 29).

4.13 Roman shade in the driver's cabin

4.13.1 Pleated Roman shades



- ▶ When on the move, the Roman shades for the windscreen, driver's window and the front passenger's window respectively must be completely removed.



Fig. 30 Pleated Roman shades

Removing the pleated shade:

- Open the snap fasteners (Fig. 30,1), loosen the magnetic strips and detach the pleated shade from the window (shown here on the passenger window).
- Stow away the pleated shades in the living area.

4.13.2 Roman shades, Remis (partially special equipment)



- ▶ While travelling, the Roman shades for the windscreen, driver's window and front passenger's window must be open, in a fixed position and secured.



Fig. 31 Roman shade for the windscreen

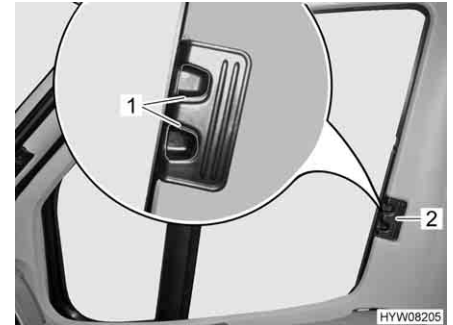


Fig. 32 Roman shade for driver's and passenger's window

Securing:

- Use the handle (Fig. 31,2) to pull the two halves of the Roman shade for the windscreen outwards as far as they will go. When doing so, move the handle horizontally in the direction of the locking recess.
- Allow the release handles (Fig. 31,1) to engage.
- Use handle (Fig. 32,2) to push in the Roman shades for the driver's and passenger's window as far as possible.
- Allow the release handles (Fig. 32,1) to engage.

4.14 Refuelling



- ▶ All gas-operated devices must be switched off for refuelling (heater, cooker, oven, grill, refrigerator - depending on the equipment). Danger of explosion!



- ▷ The fuel filler neck is part of the base vehicle.
- ▷ The fuel filler neck is labelled with the word "Diesel".

Refer to the instruction manual for the base vehicle for the position of the fuel filler neck.

4.15 Topping up AdBlue® (Citroen base vehicle)



- ▶ Store AdBlue® out of the reach of children. Do not store any AdBlue® containers in the vehicle.



- ▷ If the AdBlue® tank is empty, you cannot start the vehicle. If you have driven until the AdBlue® tank has been emptied, the tank must be filled with at least 3.8 litres.
- ▷ Do not dilute AdBlue® with water.
- ▷ Do not top the fuel tank up with AdBlue®.

The Citroen base vehicle is equipped with an emission control system that operates with the additive AdBlue®. AdBlue® can be purchased in containers of various sizes or at petrol stations that have an AdBlue® dispenser system.

The additional tank for AdBlue® has a capacity of 15 litres. Audible and visual signals indicate when the reserve has been reached. The first alarm appears when you can still drive 2400 km.

The AdBlue®- tank's filler neck is located underneath the fuel tank's filler neck. The filler neck is closed with a blue lid.



Fig. 33 Filler neck for AdBlue®

Topping up AdBlue®:

- Turn blue lid (Fig. 33,1) in an anticlockwise direction and remove it.
- Top AdBlue® up from container or dispenser system.
- Place blue lid on filler neck and turn in a clockwise direction as far as it will go.
- Immediately remove any liquid that has possible been spilled around the filler neck with a moist cloth.
- Before the next start of the engine, switch ignition on for approx. 10 seconds **without** starting the engine while doing so.



- ▷ Do not dispose of the AdBlue® containers in the domestic waste. Dispose of the empty containers in accordance with the national directives or return them to the point of sale.



- ▷ Further information can be found in the instruction manual of the base vehicle.

Chapter overview

This chapter contains instructions on how to pitch the vehicle.



- ▷ Pitch the vehicle so that it is as horizontal as possible. Use ramps where necessary. Otherwise, the water from the shower tray will not be able to drain properly.
- ▷ Secure the vehicle to prevent it from rolling.
- ▷ Animals (especially mice) can cause great damage to the interior of the vehicle. To prevent this from happening, regularly check the vehicle for damages or animal traces after pitching.

5.1 Handbrake

Firmly apply the handbrake when parking the vehicle.

5.2 Entrance step



- ▷ Observe the instructions in section 3.6.

In order to exit the vehicle, first fully extend the electrically operated entrance step. Observe the indicator lamp on the dashboard.

5.3 Ramps



- ▷ Ramps are not included in the scope of delivery. Different models are available from accessory shops.

To enable the vehicle to be parked on the level, ramps can be used for height compensation when the vehicle is parked on a hill or on uneven ground.

5.4 Wheel chocks

When parking the vehicle on slopes or inclines use the wheel chocks.

If the maximum permissible gross weight of the vehicle exceeds 4 tonnes, wheel chocks must be used when parking on gradients. The wheel chocks are provided as standard for vehicles with a maximum permissible gross weight exceeding 4 tonnes.

5.5 Supports

5.5.1 General instructions



- ▶ The steady legs must not be used to jack up the vehicle in order to work beneath it, e.g. to change a wheel or carry out maintenance work.
- ▶ Whilst the vehicle is in a jacked up position, persons must not lie down under it.



- ▷ Always apply the handbrake before extending the steady legs.
- ▷ Do not use the fitted supports as a vehicle jack. They supports are only for stabilising the parked vehicle to prevent the rear axle from bottoming out.
- ▷ When pitching the vehicle, ensure that the supports are evenly loaded.
- ▷ Before driving away, wind up the supports as far as they can go, fully retract and secure them.



- ▷ When the ground is soft, place a pad or block under the supports in order to prevent the vehicle from sinking into the ground.
- ▷ Pitch the vehicle so that it is as horizontal as possible. Otherwise, the water from the shower tray will not be able to drain properly.

5.5.2 Steady legs (special equipment)



- ▷ Depending on the model, the hexagonal nut has a joint, which can be used to bring the attached socket spanner into a more convenient position for turning.

In order to ensure their correct function, clean and grease the interior tubes of the steady legs regularly.

The length of the steady legs can be adjusted according to the model.

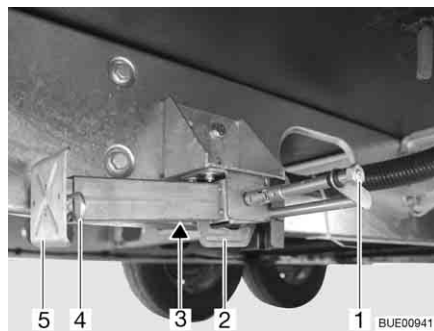


Fig. 34 Steady leg

Extending:

- Place the socket spanner on the hexagonal nut (Fig. 34,1) and rotate until the steady leg is in a perpendicular downward position.
- If the length of the steady leg can be adjusted, remove the splint (Fig. 34,4) out of the support foot extension (Fig. 34,5).
- Pull out the support foot extension until it has reached the required length.
- Insert the splint in the support foot extension.
- Rotate the hexagonal nut until the steady leg rests completely on the ground and the vehicle is in a horizontal position.

- Retracting:*
- Place the socket spanner on the hexagon nut (Fig. 34,1) and rotate until the steady leg is clear of the ground.
 - If the length of the steady leg can be adjusted, remove the splint (Fig. 34,4) out of the support foot extension (Fig. 34,5).
 - Push in the support foot extension (Fig. 34,5) and insert the splint (Fig. 34,4) in the drilled hole in the support foot extension.
 - Rotate the hexagonal nut (Fig. 34,1) until the steady leg has swung upwards and the guide (Fig. 34,2) has reached the very end of the slot (Fig. 34,3).



- ▷ Before commencing the journey, observe the following: Are all steady legs and support foot extensions retracted completely and secured with the splint?

5.5.3 Steady legs (AL-KO) (special equipment)

In order to ensure their correct function, clean and grease the interior tubes of the steady legs regularly.

The length of the steady legs can be adjusted according to the model.

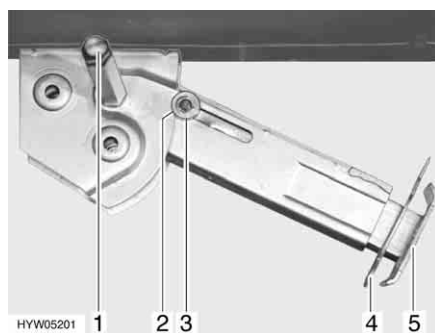


Fig. 35 Steady leg

- Extending:*
- Place the socket spanner on the hexagon nut (Fig. 35,1) and rotate until the steady leg is in a perpendicular downward position.
 - Remove the splint (Fig. 35,4) out of the support foot extension (Fig. 35,5).
 - Extend the support foot extension until it has reached the required length.
 - Insert the splint in the support foot extension.
 - Rotate the hexagonal nut until the steady leg rests completely on the ground and the vehicle is in a horizontal position.

- Retracting:*
- Place the socket spanner on the hexagon nut (Fig. 35,1) and rotate until the steady leg is clear of the ground.
 - Remove the splint (Fig. 35,4) out of the support foot extension (Fig. 35,5).
 - Push in the support foot extension (Fig. 35,5) and insert the splint (Fig. 35,4) in the drilled hole in the support foot extension.
 - Rotate the hexagonal nut (Fig. 35,1) with the socket spanner until the steady leg has swung upwards and the guide disc (Fig. 35,3) has completely retracted into the notch (Fig. 35,2).



- ▷ Before commencing the journey, observe the following: Are all steady legs and support foot extensions retracted completely and secured with the splint?

5.6 230 V connection

The vehicle can be connected to a 230 V power supply (see chapter 8).

5.7 Refrigerator



- ▶ If the refrigerator is set to 12 V operation, it will constantly consume current. Therefore, switch over to gas operation when the vehicle engine is **not** running, and the vehicle is **not** connected to the 230 V power supply.

In the case of appliances with automatic power selection, the 12 V operation of the refrigerator will only be selected in the automatic mode when the vehicle engine is running.

In the case of appliances with manual power selection: When the vehicle engine is switched off, switch the refrigerator to 230 V operation or gas operation.

5.8 Satellite unit (special equipment)



- ▶ Before commencing the journey, ensure that the antenna is in park position. Danger of accidents!



- ▷ Move the antenna into parking position in the event of strong wind (above 80 km/h).



- ▷ The vehicle must be still during the satellite search. Do not walk through the vehicle.
- ▷ Satellite reception is only possible, when the antenna is positioned in direct line of sight of the chosen satellite and the view is not blocked in any way.
- ▷ Further information can be obtained in the device manufacturer's instruction manual.

5.8.1 Satellite unit with manual satellite selection (TeleSat)

The selection of the desired satellite is carried out on the operating panel of the unit. The automatic advance unit ensures that the antenna is precisely aligned to the desired satellite.

When switching on the unit, the antenna is extended automatically. When switching off the unit and when starting the vehicle engine, the antenna is retracted automatically.

The satellite unit is operated via the operating panel. When the antenna is moving (retracting/extending or satellite search), this is indicated by an animation on the display.

The operating panel changes into standby mode after a few seconds without any operation.

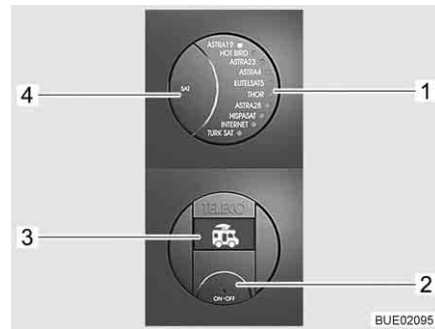


Fig. 36 Operating panel (TeleSat)

Switching on the unit:

- Press the On/Off button (Fig. 36,2). The LED indicator of the selected satellite (Fig. 36,1) and the background lighting of the buttons are lit. The symbol of the vehicle with retracted antenna appears on the display (Fig. 36,3).
- Press the On/Off button (Fig. 36,2) again. The system has been switched on. If the antenna had been retracted, it will now extend to operating position. If the LED of the desired satellite (Fig. 36,1) is already flashing, wait a few seconds. The antenna automatically aligns with this satellite (the last satellite position is saved after switching off). When the unit has found the satellite, the LED (Fig. 36,1) is lit permanently and "SAT OK" is shown on the display (Fig. 36,3).
- Switch on the SAT receiver and select the desired television channel.

Choosing a satellite:

- Press the SAT button (Fig. 36,4) repeatedly until the LED (Fig. 36,1) indicates the desired satellite. The antenna automatically aligns with this satellite.
- When the unit has found the satellite, the LED (Fig. 36,1) is lit permanently and "SAT OK" is shown on the display (Fig. 36,3).

Switching off the unit:

- Press the On/Off button (Fig. 36,2). The LED indicator of the selected satellite (Fig. 36,1) and the background lighting of the buttons are lit. The currently selected satellite is shown on the display (Fig. 36,3).
- Press the On/Off button (Fig. 36,2) again. The antenna retracts. When the antenna has been fully retracted, the symbol of the vehicle with retracted antenna is shown on the display. The system changes to the standby mode after a few seconds.

5.8.2 Satellite unit with automatic antenna alignment (Teleco)

The satellite unit is equipped with an automatic advance unit. This automatic advance unit ensures that the antenna is aligned precisely.

When switching on the unit, the antenna is extended automatically. When switching off the unit or when starting the vehicle engine, the antenna is retracted automatically.

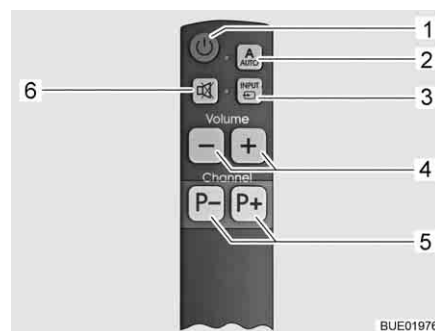
When the desired TV programme is chosen, the corresponding satellite is selected and aimed at automatically.

The satellite unit is operated via remote control. Optionally, a simplified remote control is available.



- 1 Television on/off button
- 2 AUTO button (advance unit and television on/off)
- 3 INPUT button (selection of the signal source)
- 4 Programme selection buttons

Fig. 37 Remote control



- 1 Television on/off button
- 2 AUTO button (advance unit and television on/off)
- 3 INPUT button (selection of the signal source)
- 4 Volume buttons
- 5 Programme selection buttons
- 6 Mute button

Fig. 38 Simplified remote control (optional)

Switching on the unit:

- Press the AUTO button (Fig. 37,2 or Fig. 38,2) for 1 second. Thus, the television and the advance unit are switched on.

If the antenna had been retracted, it will now extend to operating position. The antenna then automatically starts searching for the satellite suitable for the set TV programme.

When the unit finds the satellite, the TV programme appears automatically.

Choosing a TV programme:

- Press the programme selection buttons (Fig. 37,4 or Fig. 38,5) until the desired TV programme has been selected.

The antenna automatically searches for the suitable satellite.

When the unit finds the satellite, the TV programme appears automatically.

Choosing the signal source:

- Press the INPUT button (Fig. 37,3 or Fig. 38,3) repeatedly until the desired signal source has been selected.
- To return to the satellite channels display, press the INPUT button (Fig. 37,3 or Fig. 38,3) repeatedly until the signal source DVB-S2 has been selected.

Switching off the unit:

- Press the AUTO button (Fig. 37,2 or Fig. 38,2).

The antenna automatically moves into parking position. When reaching the parking position, this is displayed on the screen.

The television and advance unit switch off after a few seconds.

Operating the unit without using the antenna:

- Press the Television on/off button (Fig. 37,1 or Fig. 38,1). The advance unit is not switched on, the antenna remains in parking position.
- Press the INPUT button (Fig. 37,3 or Fig. 38,3) repeatedly until the desired signal source (e.g. DVD) has been selected.
- Press the Television on/off button (Fig. 37,1 or Fig. 38,1) to switch the television off.

5.8.3 Satellite unit with automatic antenna alignment (Oyster Premium)



- ▷ In the event of a longer stationary period, disconnect the flat screen from the power supply with the flip switch to prevent the living area battery from getting discharged.



- ▷ If the location is adjusted with the help of the list of countries, the satellite search will be accelerated.
- ▷ If the antenna has been retracted by switching on the ignition, it is required to restart the system by switching it off and on.
- ▷ The reception of DVB-T/T2 channels (digital terrestrial television) is only possible if there is a DVB-T/T2 antenna present.

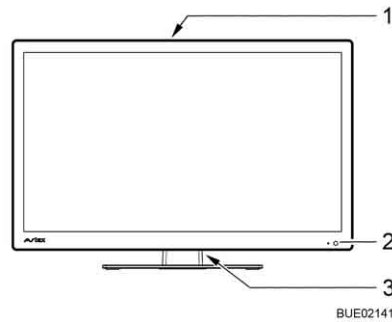
The antenna will automatically be aligned with a pre adjusted satellite if the receiver system is within the reach of this satellite.

When switching on the unit, the antenna is extended automatically. When switching off the unit or when starting the vehicle engine, the antenna is retracted automatically.

When the desired TV programme is chosen, the corresponding satellite is selected and aimed at automatically.

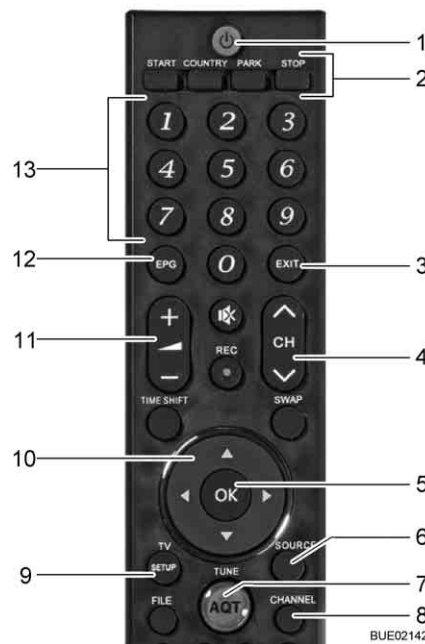
The remote control's basic operating functions are listed here; refer to the manufacturer's separate instruction manual for a full description.

The system is equipped in the factory with list of standard channels as well as lists of favourites. You can change or add to these standard lists manually as desired.



- 1 Operating buttons on the back of the device
- 2 Standby mode/operation LED
- 3 ON/OFF flip switch

Fig. 39 Operation on the flat screen



- 1 POWER button
- 2 Manual control of antenna
- 3 EXIT button - exit menu without saving
- 4 Programme selection button
- 5 OK button - confirm selection or save setting
- 6 SOURCE button - select signal source
- 7 AQT button - start DVB-T/T2 channel scan
- 8 CHANNEL button - call list of channels
- 9 SETUP button - call main menu
- 10 Navigation buttons in the menu
- 11 Volume button
- 12 EPG button - programme guide
- 13 Numeric keys - call programme channel directly or enter numbers

Fig. 40 Remote control

Switching on the unit:

- Set flip switch (Fig. 39,3) on the flat screen's back to ON. The system changes to standby mode. The LED (Fig. 39,2) is lit red.

Further operation is performed via the remote control and the indicators displayed on the flat screen.

- Press the POWER button (Fig. 40,1) on the remote control. The LED (Fig. 39,2) is lit blue.

Choosing a TV programme:

- Press the programme selection buttons (Fig. 40,4 or Fig. 40,13) until the desired TV programme has been selected.

The antenna automatically searches for the suitable satellite.

When the unit finds the satellite, the TV programme appears automatically.

Choosing the signal source:

- Press the SOURCE button (Fig. 40,6) repeatedly until the desired signal source has been selected.
- To return to the satellite channels display, press the SOURCE button repeatedly until the signal source DVB-S has been selected.

Operating the unit without using the antenna:

- Press the PARK button (Fig. 40,2). The antenna moves into parking position.
- Press the SOURCE button (Fig. 40,6) repeatedly until the desired signal source (e.g. DVD) has been selected.

Switching off the unit:

- Press the POWER button (Fig. 40,1) on the remote control. The system changes to standby mode. The LED (Fig. 39,2) is lit red.
- Set flip switch (Fig. 39,3) on the flat screen's back to OFF.

The system is disconnected from the power supply.

The antenna automatically moves into parking position.

5.9 Awning (special equipment)



- ▷ Retract the awning in strong wind, rain or snow.
- ▷ In the case of light rain, shorten one of the support legs so that water can run off.
- ▷ Only retract the awning when the fabric is dry. When the awning must be retracted while the fabric is still wet: Extend the awning as soon as possible, in order to dry out the fabric.
- ▷ Before retracting, remove leaves and coarse dirt from the awning.



- ▷ Only use the awning for protection against the sun.
- ▷ Also read the manufacturer's instruction manual.

Advantages of the awning

The advantages of an awning are:

- The awning provides shade.
- The awning creates a covered vestibule and thus expands the space.
- The vehicle thus becomes more homelike.
- The integrated LED lighting (special equipment) provides additional light.



Fig. 41 Awning

Putting up the awning:

- Use the manual crank to open up the awning (Fig. 41,1).
- Set up the brackets (Fig. 41,2) when the awning is open.

Chapter overview

This chapter contains instructions about living in the vehicle.

6.1 Central locking system (special equipment)



- ▷ The central locking mechanism locks the driver's door, the passenger's door and the conversion entrance door.
- ▷ The central locking system has no function, if the battery cut-off switch on the transformer/rectifier is switched off.
- ▷ If, after you press the release button, a door is not opened within 40 seconds, the central locking system automatically locks the doors again.



Fig. 42 Remote control for central locking system (2 buttons)

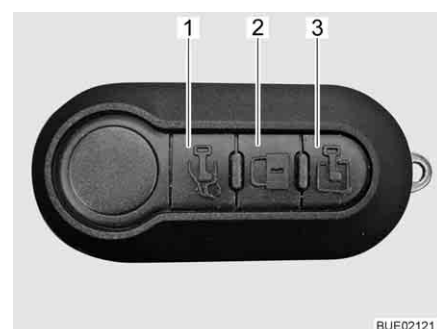




Fig. 43 Remote control for central locking system (3 buttons)

Unlocking doors:

- Press the  button (Fig. 42,1) once briefly. The door locks are unlatched.


Locking doors:

- Press the  button (Fig. 42,2) once briefly. The door locks are locked.


Model with 3 buttons

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle will be equipped with a remote control with 3 buttons.

Unlocking driver's door:

- Press the  button (Fig. 43,1) once briefly. The driver's door is unlocked.

Unlocking conversion door:

- Press the  button (Fig. 43,3) once briefly. The conversion door is unlocked.

Locking all doors:

- Press the  button (Fig. 43,2) once briefly. All doors have been locked.

If one or more doors have not been correctly closed, the direction indicators will be flashing rapidly.



- ▷ Further information can be found in the instruction manual of the base vehicle.

6.2 Conversion door



- ▶ Only drive with locked doors.



- ▷ Locking the doors can prevent them from opening of their own accord, e.g. during an accident.
- ▷ Locked doors also prevent forced entry, e.g. when waiting at traffic lights. However, in an emergency, locked doors make it more difficult for helpers to enter the vehicle.
- ▷ When leaving the vehicle, always lock the doors.

6.2.1 Conversion door, outside (partially special equipment)

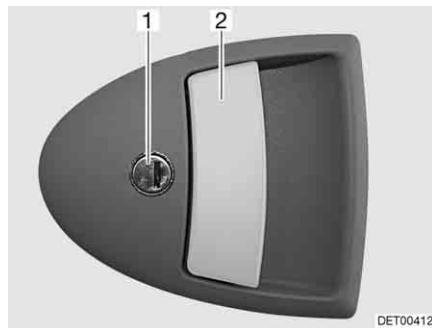


Fig. 44 Door lock of conversion door, outside

- Opening:*
- Insert the key into locking cylinder (Fig. 44,1) and turn until the door lock is unlatched.
 - Return the key to the central position and remove it.
 - Pull on the door handle (Fig. 44,2). The door is open.
- Locking:*
- Insert the key into locking cylinder (Fig. 44,1) and turn until the door lock is engaged.
 - Return the key to the central position and remove it.

6.2.2 Conversion door, outside



Fig. 45 Door lock of conversion door, outside

- Opening:*
- Insert the key into locking cylinder (Fig. 45,1) and turn until the door lock is unlatched.
 - Return the key to the central position and remove it.
 - Pull upper part of the door handle (Fig. 45,2). The door is open.
- Locking:*
- Insert the key into locking cylinder (Fig. 45,1) and turn until the door lock is engaged.
 - Return the key to the central position and remove it.

6.2.3 Conversion door, inside

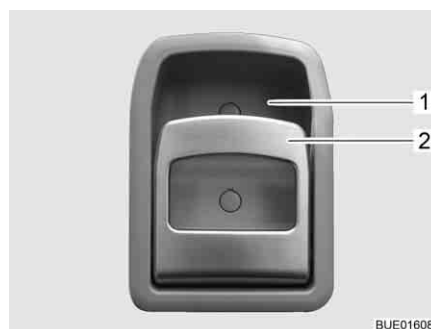


Fig. 46 Door lock of conversion door, inside

- Opening:*
- Pull on the handle (Fig. 46,2). The door lock is unlatched or opened.
- Locking:*
- Press the upper part of the handle (Fig. 46,2) in the direction of the recessed handle (Fig. 46,1). The door lock is locked.

6.2.4 Window of conversion door (partially special equipment)

The conversion door window is fitted with a Roman shade.

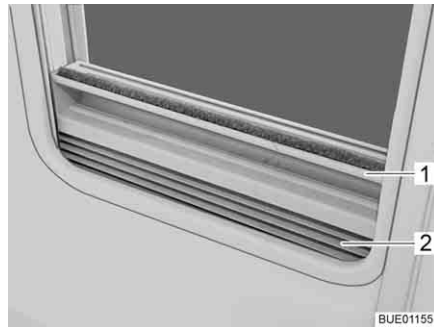


Fig. 47 Roman shade

- Closing:**
- Grip the Roman shade (Fig. 47,2) in the middle of the holding bar (Fig. 47,1), pull it upwards and then release it at the desired height. The Roman shade will stay at this height.
- Opening:**
- Grip the Roman shade in the middle of the holding bar and push it down.

6.2.5 Folding insect screen on the conversion door (partially special equipment)



- ▷ Open the insect screen completely before closing the conversion door.



Fig. 48 Insect screen

- Closing:**
- Pull out the insect screen completely by the bar (Fig. 48,1).
- Opening:**
- Push the insect screen into its initial position by the bar (Fig. 48,1).

6.3 External flaps



- ▷ Before commencing the journey, close all external flaps and lock them.
- ▷ To open and close the external flap, open or close all locks that are fitted to the external flap.



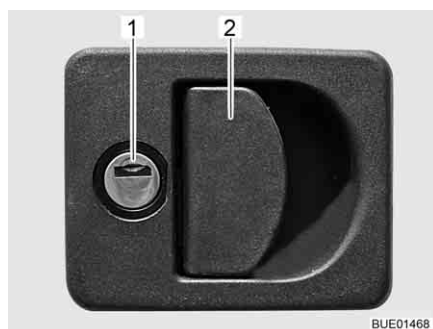
- ▷ When leaving the vehicle, close all external flaps.

The external flaps fitted to the vehicle are all fitted with identical locking cylinders. Therefore, all locks can be opened with a single key.

6.3.1 Flap lock with recessed handle



- ▷ To open the external flap, pull all the lock handles fitted to that particular external flap at the same time.



- 1 Locking cylinder
- 2 Lock handle

Fig. 49 Flap lock with recessed handle

- Opening:**
- Insert key into locking cylinder (Fig. 49,1) and turn a quarter turn. The flap lock is unlatched.
 - Remove the key.
 - Pull on the lock handle (Fig. 49,2). The external flap is open.

- Closing:**
- Firmly close the external flap.
 - Insert key into locking cylinder and turn a quarter turn. The flap lock is locked.
 - Remove the key.

6.3.2 Garage flap emergency release

The garage flap can be opened from the interior using the emergency release. The emergency release is even possible if the garage flap has been locked with the key.



Fig. 50 Garage flap emergency release

Unlocking the garage flap:

- Pull both handles of the emergency release (Fig. 50,2).
- Push the garage flap (Fig. 50,1) outwards.

6.3.3 Flap lock with push button

Depending on the flap size the service flap is equipped with one or two lockable push-button locks.



Fig. 51 Service flap push-button lock



Fig. 52 Service flap push-button lock (alternative)

Opening:

- Insert the key into locking cylinder of the lockable push-button lock (Fig. 51,1 or Fig. 52,1) and turn a quarter turn. The push-button lock is unlatched.
- Remove the key.
- If equipped, unlock the second lockable push-button lock as well.
- Press the two push buttons (Fig. 52,2) of the push-button locks simultaneously with the thumb and open the service flap.

Closing:

- Close the service flap and press it shut. The push-button locks are now engaged but not locked.
- Insert the key into locking cylinder of the lockable push-button lock (Fig. 51,1 or Fig. 52,1) and turn a quarter turn. The push-button lock is locked.
- Remove the key.
- If equipped, lock the second lockable push-button lock as well.

6.3.4 Service unit flap lock



Fig. 53 Flap lock, locked

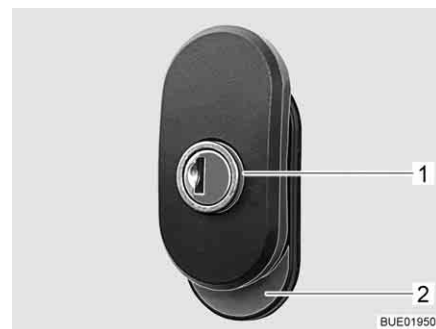


Fig. 54 Flap lock, open

- Opening:**
- Insert the key into the locking cylinder and turn until the red ring (Fig. 54,1) is visible. The flap lock is unlatched.
 - Remove the key.
 - Turn the handle half a turn in an anticlockwise direction until the red area (Fig. 54,2) is visible. The lock is open.
- Closing:**
- Close flap.
 - Turn the handle half a turn in a clockwise direction until the red area (Fig. 54,2) is no longer visible.
 - Insert the key into the locking cylinder and turn until the red ring (Fig. 54,1) is no longer visible.
 - Remove the key.

6.4 Furniture flaps



- ▷ Before commencing the journey, close all furniture flaps and inner doors and lock them.
- ▷ The furniture flaps shown in this section are examples. Depending on the model, the locks and handles on the furniture flaps may differ to those displayed here.

6.4.1 Furniture flaps with push button

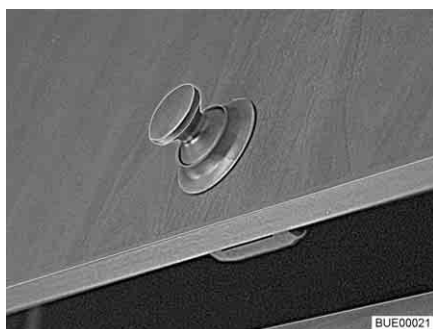


Fig. 55 Furniture flap with round push button

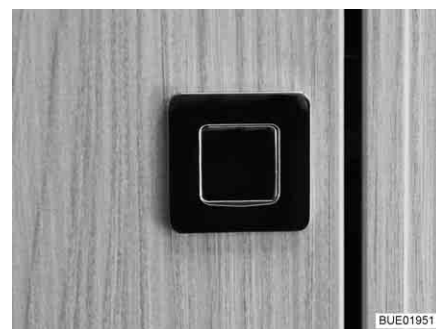


Fig. 56 Furniture flap with rectangular push button

- Opening:**
- Press inner part of the lock. The push button (Fig. 55 or Fig. 56) jumps out.
 - Hold push button and open furniture flap.

- Closing:*
- Press furniture flap shut.
 - Press push button in until it locks. The furniture flap is closed correctly when the fastener locks into place.

6.4.2 Furniture flaps with handle and push button

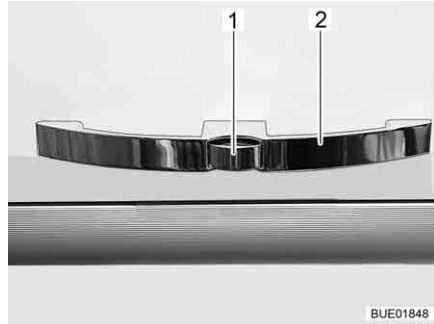


Fig. 57 Furniture flap with handle (example)

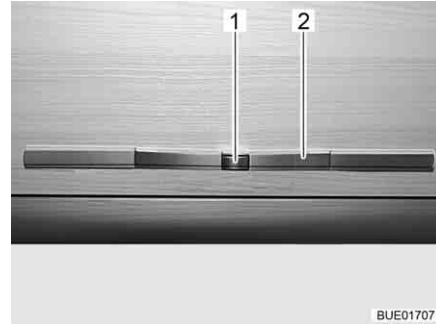


Fig. 58 Furniture flap with handle (alternative)

- Opening:*
- Press the release knob (Fig. 57,1 or Fig. 58,1) on the handle (Fig. 57,2 or Fig. 58,2) and hold it down.
 - Pull handle until furniture flap is open.

- Closing:*
- Press the furniture flap down until you can feel the flap hinge close and hear the lock snap into place.

6.4.3 Furniture flaps with handle and unlocking bar

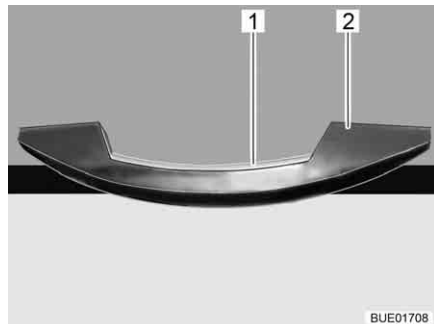


Fig. 59 Handle with unlocking bar (example)

- Opening:*
- Press the unlocking bar (Fig. 59,1) and hold it down.
 - Pull the handle (Fig. 59,2) until the furniture flap is open.

- Closing:*
- Press the furniture flap down until you can feel the flap hinge close and hear the lock snap into place.

6.4.4 Furniture flaps with release handle

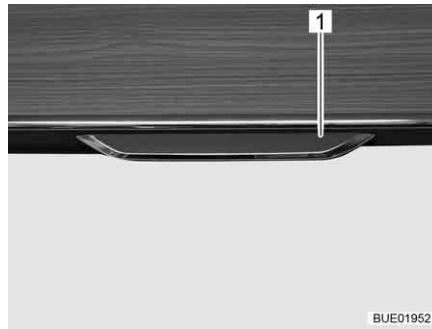


Fig. 60 Furniture flap with release handle

Opening:

- Pull the release handle (Fig. 60,1) outwards.
- Pull the release handle until the furniture flap is open.

Closing:

- Press the furniture flap down until you can feel the flap hinge close and hear the lock snap into place.

6.5 Floor compartment cover

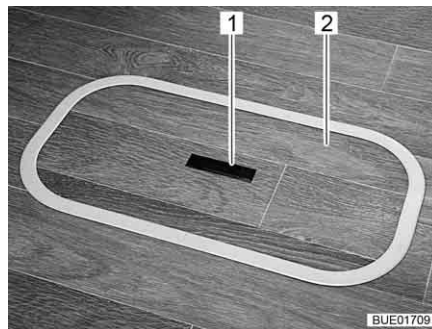


Fig. 61 Floor compartment cover (handle recessed)

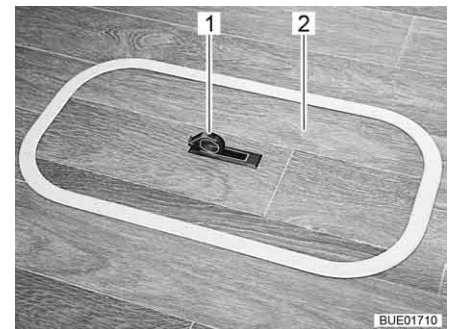


Fig. 62 Floor compartment cover (handle swung out)

Opening:

- Push one side of the grip plate (Fig. 61,1) downwards. The handle (Fig. 62,1) swivels upwards.
- Remove the cover (Fig. 61,2 or Fig. 62,2) upwards.

Closing:

- Insert the cover in the frame on the floor.
- Swivel handle downwards.

6.6 Rotating seats



- ▶ Before commencing the journey, rotate all swivel seats in the direction of travel and lock in position. During the journey, the swivel seats must remain locked in place in the direction of travel.



- ▷ Push the driver's seat into the central position before rotating it. If the driver's seat is in the very back or in the very front, there is a risk of colliding with the handbrake lever or the seating group when rotating the driver's seat.



- ▷ The driver's seat and the front passenger's seat are part of the base vehicle. The adjustment of the seats is described in the instruction manual of the base vehicle.

Rotating:

- Push both armrests at the driver's/front passenger's seat upward.
- Push the driver's seat / front passenger's seat into the central position.

The seats can only be locked in position in the direction of travel.

6.7 Light switch

6.7.1 Entrance area



- ▷ The light switches shown in this section are examples. Depending on the model, the type and allocation of the light switches may differ to those displayed here.

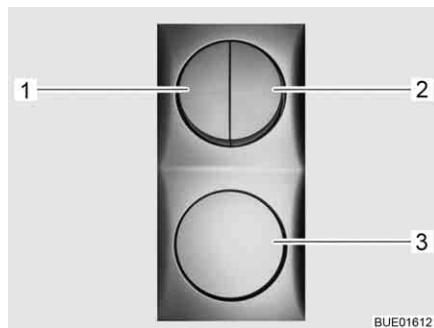


Fig. 63 Light switch



Fig. 64 Awning light

The entrance area has light switches (Fig. 63,1-3) for the following lamps:

- Entrance lights
- Awning lights
- Living area lights
- Canvas blind lighting (special equipment)

6.7.2 Interior



▷ The lamps shown in this section are examples. Not all lamps used in the vehicle are shown. The examples are intended to clarify the possible positions for the light switches. The type and appearance of the light switches can deviate from those shown here.



Fig. 65 Spotlight, switch mounted directly on the lamp (example)

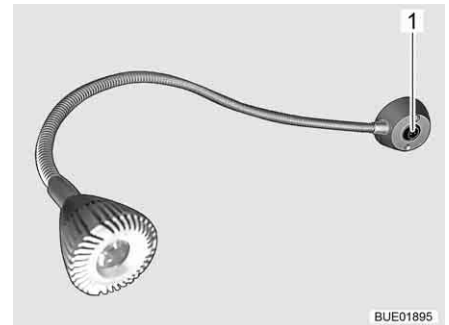


Fig. 66 Spotlight, switch mounted directly on the lamp (example)



Fig. 67 Ceiling lamp, separate from the switch (example)

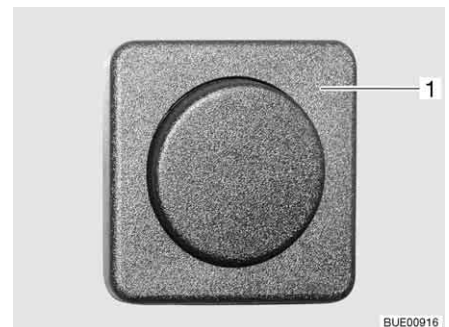


Fig. 68 Switch, separate from the lamp (example)

The light switches in the interior are located either on the lamp itself (Fig. 65, 1 or Fig. 66, 1) or near the lamp (Fig. 68, 1).



Fig. 69 Recessed light, light switch in the lamp

To switch the recessed light on and off, press the interior of the recessed light (Fig. 69, 1).

6.7.3 Wardrobe light (partially special equipment)



- ▷ The wardrobe light can be removed from its holder (Fig. 70,1) and used as a torch.
- ▷ When the wardrobe door is closed, the wardrobe light switches off automatically.
- ▷ A brightness sensor ensures that the wardrobe light comes on only when it is dark. This prevents the wardrobe light from being accidentally switched on during daylight hours, which would waste the batteries.

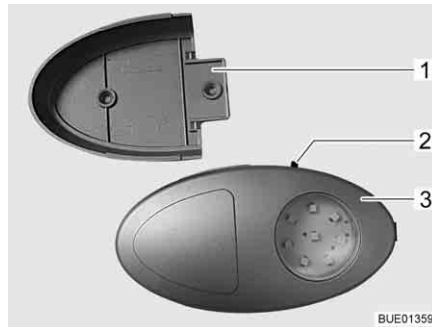


Fig. 70 Wardrobe light

The On/Off switch (Fig. 70,2) is located directly on the wardrobe light (Fig. 70,3).

6.7.4 Tube lamp in the rear garage

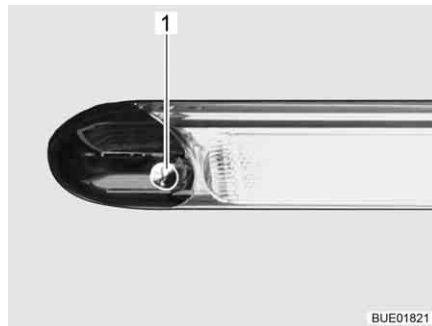


Fig. 71 Tube lamp in the rear garage

Move your hand over the sensor (Fig. 71,1) on the lamp to switch it on and off.

6.8 Spotlight



- ▶ Bulbs and light fittings can be extremely hot.
- ▶ Allow the light bulbs and lamp holders to cool down before touching them.
- ▶ If the light is switched on or still hot, there must always be a safety distance of at least 30 cm between stores or curtains and flammable objects. Fire hazard!

The spotlight can be rotated, moved or detached.

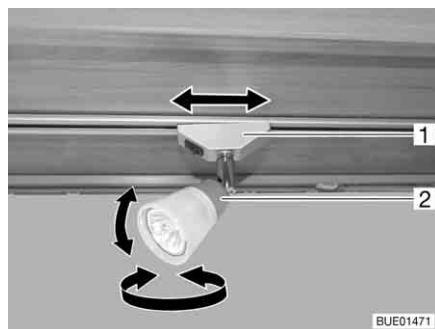


Fig. 72 Spotlight

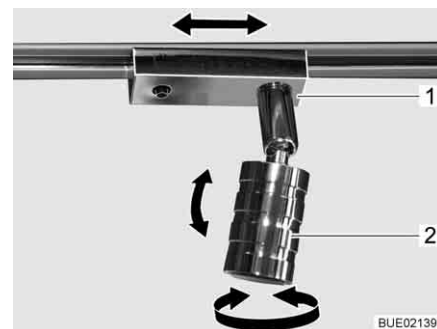


Fig. 73 Spotlight (alternative)

Rotating: ■ Grasp the housing (Fig. 72,2 or Fig. 73,2) and turn it.

The housing can be turned in different directions:

- To the left and to the right
- Up and down

Shifting: ■ Grip socket (Fig. 72,1 or Fig. 73,1) and turn by approx. 45°.
 ■ Push spotlight along the rail system to desired position.
 ■ Turn socket back.

Removing: ■ Grip socket (Fig. 72,1 or Fig. 73,1) and turn by 90°.
 ■ Remove spotlight from rail.

The spotlight can be installed in any position into the rails.

6.9 Holder for flat screen



- ▶ Before commencing the journey, place and secure the flat screen and screen support in the initial position. If the screen holder is installed in a TV cabinet: Close TV cabinet.

6.9.1 Holder on the column

The holder for the flat screen is attached to a column.

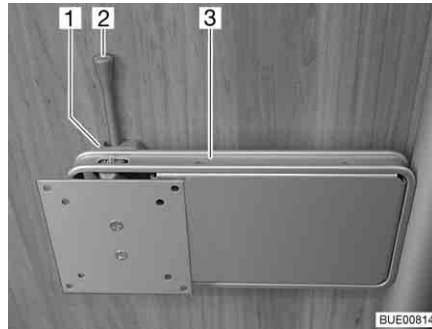


Fig. 74 Holder on the column

- Positioning:*
- Push the release lever (Fig. 74,2) to the side and turn the holder (Fig. 74,3) with the flat screen to the desired position.
 - Press the flat screen slightly upwards and swivel it to the desired position. Three different inclination angles may be used.
- Storing away:*
- Turn the flat screen back until the holder (Fig. 74,3) engages in the lock (Fig. 74,1).

6.9.2 Holder with jointed arm

The flat screen is fastened to a jointed arm.

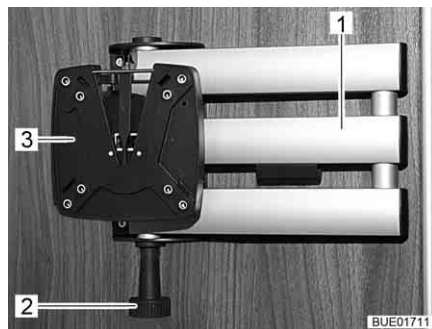


Fig. 75 Holder with jointed arm

- Positioning:*
- Pull the release knob (Fig. 75,2). The jointed arm (Fig. 75,1) is unlocked.
 - Swivel flat screen into the desired position.
 - Take hold of the flat screen at the top and bottom edge with both hands and set the desired angle of inclination.
- Storing away:*
- Turn the flat screen back into the original position until you hear the holder (Fig. 75,3) engage in the lock.

6.9.3 Wall holder

The flat screen is fastened to a wall holder.

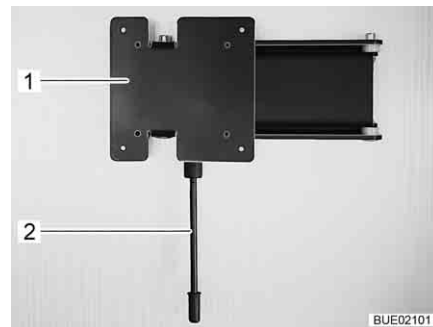


Fig. 76 Wall holder

- Positioning:*
- Pull down the release lever (Fig. 76,1) and turn the holder (Fig. 76,2) with the flat screen to the desired position.
- Storing away:*
- Pull down the release lever and push back the flat screen until the holder engages.

6.9.4 Holder with release lever

The holder for the flat screen is attached to the wall.

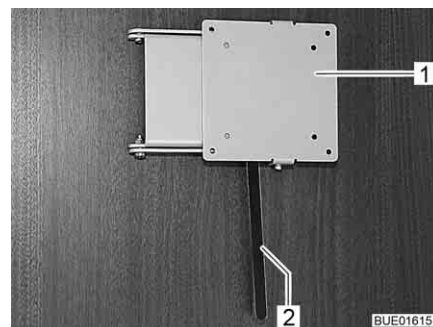


Fig. 77 Holder with release lever

- Positioning:*
- Push the release lever (Fig. 77,2) to the side and turn the holder (Fig. 77,1) with the flat screen to the desired position.
 - Press the flat screen slightly upwards and swivel it to the desired position. Three different inclination angles may be used.
- Storing away:*
- Turn flat screen back until the holder (Fig. 77,1) engages in the lock.

6.9.5 Holder, rotatable

The flat screen is fastened to a holder with a rotatable joint.



Fig. 78 Holder (rotatable)

Positioning: ■ Swivel the flat screen into the desired position.

Removing flat screen: ■ Press and hold latch (Fig. 78,1) to the right.
■ Remove flat screen upwards.

6.10 Ventilation



- ▶ The oxygen in the vehicle interior is used up by breathing and the use of gas operated appliances. That is why the used air must be replaced permanently. For this purpose, forced ventilation options (e.g. skylights with forced ventilation, mushroom-shaped vents or floor vents) are fitted to the vehicle. Never cover or block forced ventilations from the inside or outside with objects such as e.g. a winter mat. Keep forced ventilations clear of snow and leaves. There is a danger of suffocation due to increased CO₂ levels.



- ▷ Although sufficient ventilation is provided, in certain weather conditions, condensation can form on metal objects (e.g. screwed connections in the floor).
- ▷ Additional cold spots can occur at thermal "bridges" (e.g. mushroom-shaped vents, skylight edges, sockets, filler necks, flaps, etc.).

Condensation

Ensure that there is a continuous exchange of air by providing frequent and efficient ventilation. This is the only method for ensuring that condensation and resulting mould is not formed during cool weather. During the colder season, a pleasant living climate is created if heating output, air distribution and ventilation are synchronised. To avoid draft close the air outlet nozzles on the dashboard and set the air distribution of the base vehicle to air circulation.

If the vehicle is laid up for a longer period, occasionally ventilate it well, especially in summer as heat accumulation can occur. Do not only air the interior, but also the storage spaces which are accessible from the outside. Air the parking place as well if the vehicle is parked in a closed space (e.g. garage). The occurrence of condensation could lead to the formation of mould.

6.11 Windows



- ▷ The windows are fitted with a blind or Roman shade and with an insect screen or folding insect screen. After the latch has been released, the blind and insect screen automatically spring back to the initial position by tensile force. In order not to damage the tension mechanics, hold onto the blind or insect screen and allow it to slowly return to the initial position. The Roman shade and folding insect screen are made of thin woven fabric. In order not to damage the Roman shade or the insect screen, grasp the respective handle and carefully return it to the initial position.
- ▷ Do not keep blinds closed over a longer period of time as that can cause increased material wear.
- ▷ If the blind or the Roman shade is completely closed, exposure to direct sunlight can cause heat to accumulate between the blind/the Roman shade and the window. The window could be damaged.
Therefore, if the shade is installed in the bottom blind box, close the shade only 2/3 when sunlight is intense. This allows the heat to escape between the window and the shade.
If the shade is installed in the top blind box, close the shade fully and open it regularly.
Also move the window into the "continuous ventilation" position.
- ▷ Before commencing the journey, close the windows.
- ▷ Depending on the weather, close the windows far enough to prevent moisture from entering.
- ▷ To open and close the window, open or close all catch levers which are fitted to the window.



- ▷ When leaving the vehicle, always close the windows.
- ▷ In extreme weather conditions or if the temperature fluctuates strongly, a light condensation film can form on the double-glazed acrylic glass. The glass is designed in such a way that condensation can evaporate when the external temperature increases. There is no danger of the double-glazed acrylic glass being damaged by condensation.

6.11.1 Hinged window



- ▷ If windows with automatic hinges are fitted, open the window fully in order to release the lock. If the locking device is not released and the window is closed nevertheless, there is the danger of the window breaking due to the massive counter-pressure.
- ▷ When opening the hinged windows, ensure that there are no torsional forces. Open and close the hinged windows evenly.
- ▷ If the catch lever is equipped with a safety knob, press the safety knob when operating the catch lever.

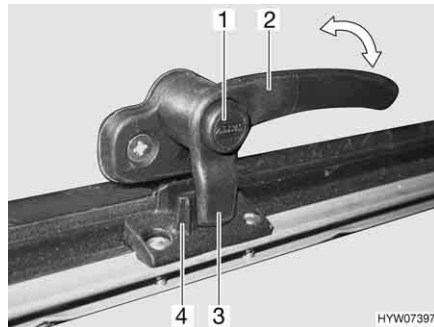


Fig. 79 Catch lever with safety knob in "closed" position

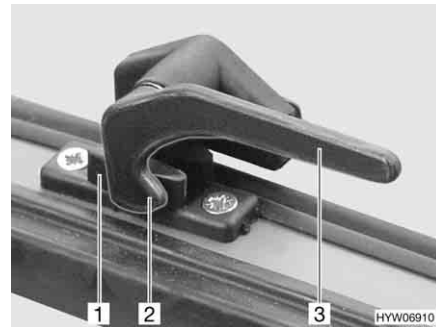


Fig. 80 Catch lever in "closed" position

Opening:

- Press and hold the security button (Fig. 79,1), if present.
- Turn the catch lever (Fig. 79,2 or Fig. 80,3) a quarter turn towards the centre of the window.

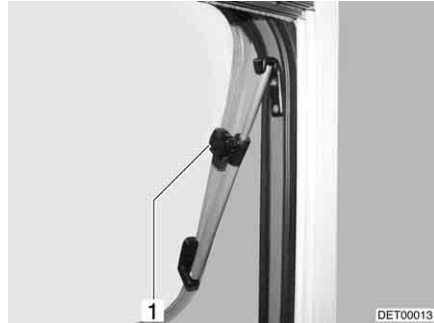


Fig. 81 Hinged window with rotary hinge



Fig. 82 Hinged window with automatic hinge

- Hinged window with rotary hinge: Open the hinged window until the required position has been reached and use knurled knob (Fig. 81,1) to secure in position.
Hinged window with automatic hinge: Open the hinged window to the desired latched position. The automatic hinge (Fig. 82,1) locks in place automatically.

The hinged window remains locked in the required position.

- Closing:*
- Hinged window with rotary hinge: Turn knurled knob (Fig. 81,1) until the latch is released.
 - Hinged window with automatic hinge: Open the hinged window as wide as is necessary to release the lock.
 - Close the hinged window.
 - Press and hold the security button (Fig. 79,1), if present.
 - Turn the catch lever (Fig. 79,2 or Fig. 80,3) a quarter turn towards the window frame. The locking catch (Fig. 79,3 or Fig. 80,2) on the catch lever is entirely on the inner side of the window catch (Fig. 79,4 or Fig. 80,1).

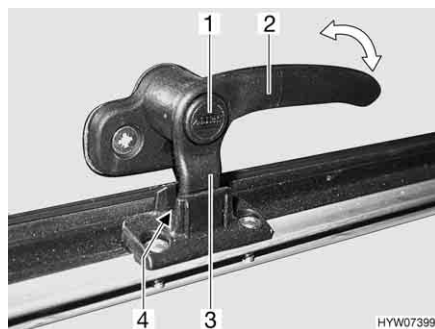


Fig. 83 Catch lever with safety knob in "continuous ventilation" position

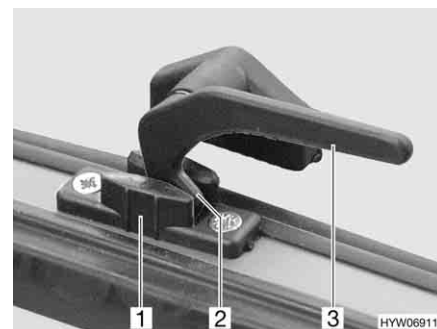


Fig. 84 Catch lever in "continuous ventilation" position

Continuous ventilation

With the catch lever, the hinged window can be placed in two positions:

- "Continuous ventilation" (Fig. 83 and Fig. 84)
- "Firmly closed" (Fig. 79 and Fig. 80)

To place the hinged window into the "continuous ventilation" position:

- Press and hold the security button (Fig. 83,1), if present.
- Turn the catch lever (Fig. 83,2 or Fig. 84,3) a quarter turn towards the centre of the window.
- Slightly open the hinged window outwards.
- Return the catch lever to its initial position. Move the locking catch (Fig. 83,3 or Fig. 84,2) on the catch lever into the recess of the window catch (Fig. 83,4 or Fig. 84,1).
- Press and hold the security button (Fig. 83,1), if present.
- Make certain that the safety knob is not pushed in but rather that it secures the catch lever.

During the journey, the hinged window may not be in "continuous ventilation" position.

If it rains, the "continuous ventilation" hinged window position could lead to splashing water penetrating the living area. Therefore, close the hinged windows completely.

6.11.2 Sliding window with pressure lock



Fig. 85 Sliding window, locked



Fig. 86 Sliding window, unlocked

- Opening:**
- Push the latch (Fig. 85,1) downwards.
 - Open the window to the desired position.

- Closing:**
- Close the window as far as it can go.
 - Push the latch (Fig. 86,1) upwards.

6.11.3 Blind and insect screen



- ▷ Open blinds before commencing the journey. When the blinds are closed, vibrations can damage the spring shaft.



- ▷ Depending on the window size, the blinds are fitted with one or two handles.

The windows are fitted with a blind and an insect screen. The blind and insect screen are adjusted separately.

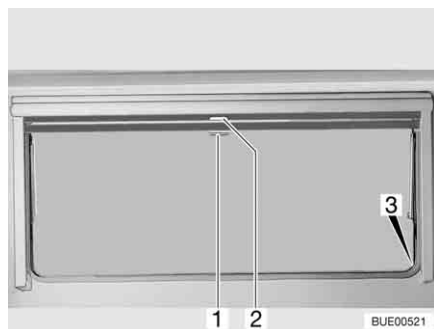


Fig. 87 Hinged window

Blind The blind is located in the upper blind box.

- Closing:**
- Pull blind at the handle (Fig. 87,2) downwards. If the blind is to be completely closed, it is suspended into the locking devices (Fig. 87,3) situated on both sides of the window frame.

- Opening:*
- If the blind is completely closed: Press handle (Fig. 87,2) downwards and, at the same time, tilt it slightly inward. The blind can be taken out of the locking devices situated on both sides of the window frame.
 - If the blind is in an intermediate position: Pull the handle (Fig. 87,2) slightly downwards until the locking device releases.
 - Use handle to return blind slowly to its initial position.

Insect screen The insect screen is located in the upper blind box.

- Closing:*
- Pull insect screen at the handle (Fig. 87,1) down and hang it into the locking devices (Fig. 87,3) situated on both sides of the window frame.

- Opening:*
- Press handle (Fig. 87,1) downwards and, at the same time, tilt it slightly inward. The insect screen can be taken out of the locking devices situated on both sides of the window frame.
 - Use handle to return the insect screen slowly to its initial position.

6.11.4 Roman shade and insect screen

The windows are fitted with a Roman shade and an insect screen. The insect screen can only be moved together with the Roman shade.

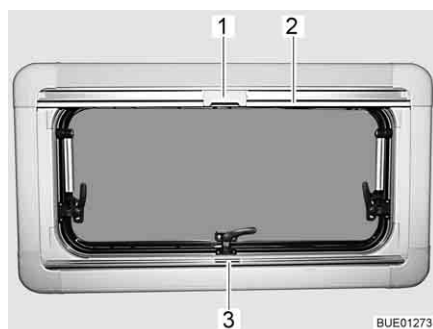


Fig. 88 Hinged window

Roman shade The Roman shade is located in the bottom blind box.

- Closing:*
- Grip the Roman shade in the centre of the holding bar (Fig. 88,3), pull it from the bottom to the top and then release it at the desired height. The Roman shade will stay at this height.

- Opening:*
- Grip the Roman shade in the centre of the holding bar and push it down.

Insect screen The insect screen is located in the upper blind box.

- Closing:*
- Pull the insect screen down using the holding bar (Fig. 88,2), until it touches the holding bar of the Roman shade (Fig. 88,3).
 - Clip the catch (Fig. 88,1) on the insect screen into the handle of the Roman shade.

- Opening:*
- Push the catch (Fig. 88,1) on the insect screen inwards.
 - Move the insect screen back slowly on the holding bar (Fig. 88,2).

6.11.5 Roman shades for windscreen, driver's window and front passenger's window

Depending on the model, the driver's cabin is shaded either with pleated shades or with Remis Roman shades (special equipment).

Pleated shades

The pleated shades are standard equipment on the vehicle.



Fig. 89 Pleated shades on passenger window



Fig. 90 Fixing of pleated shades

The pleated shades (Fig. 89,2) are fixed with snap fasteners (Fig. 89,1 and Fig. 90,1).

Remis Roman shades (special equipment)

The Roman shades are fixed with magnetic strips and are permanently fitted to the vehicle inside the frame.

Proceed as described below to open or close permanently installed Roman shades.

Windscreen

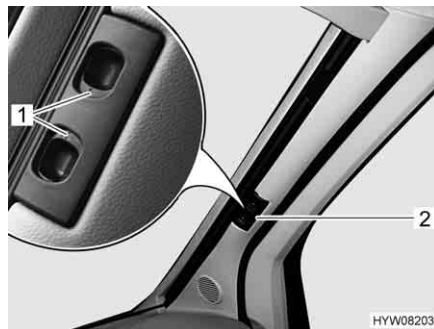


Fig. 91 Roman shade for the windscreen

Shading:

- Press the release handles (Fig. 91,1) and hold them down.
- Use the handle (Fig. 91,2) to pull the Roman shade for the windscreen towards the centre of the window.
- Close the second Roman shade for the windscreen in the same way. A magnetic catch holds both parts of the Roman shade together in the centre.

Opening the Roman shade:

- Press the release handles (Fig. 91,1) and hold them down.
- Use the handle (Fig. 91,2) to pull the two halves of the Roman shade for the windscreen outwards as far as they will go. As you do so, lift the handle up as high as the locking recess.
- Let go of the release handles (Fig. 91,1) and let them engage.

Driver's window and front passenger's window

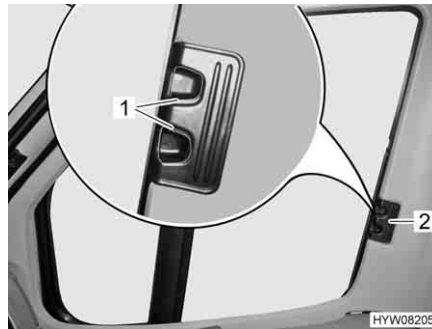


Fig. 92 Roman shade for driver's and passenger's window

- Shading:**
- Press the release handles (Fig. 92,1) and hold them down.
 - Using the handle (Fig. 92,2), draw the Roman shades for the driver's and passenger's window to the other side of the window and secure them to the magnetic strips.

- Opening the Roman shade:**
- Press the release handles (Fig. 92,1) and hold them down.
 - Use handle (Fig. 92,2) to push in the Roman shades for the driver's and passenger's window as far as possible.
 - Let go of the release handles (Fig. 92,1) and let them engage.

6.12 Skylights

Depending on the model, skylights with or without forced ventilation are fitted to the vehicle. If a skylight is fitted without forced ventilation, the forced ventilation is performed using mushroom-shaped vents.



- ▶ The apertures for forced ventilation must always be kept open. Never cover or block forced ventilations with objects such as e.g. a winter mat. Keep forced ventilations clear of snow and leaves.



- ▷ The skylights are fitted with a blind or Roman shade and with an insect screen or folding insect screen. After the latch has been released, the blind and insect screen automatically spring back to the initial position by tensile force. In order not to damage the tension mechanics, hold onto the blind or insect screen and allow it to slowly return to the initial position. The Roman shade and folding insect screen are made of thin woven fabric. In order not to damage the Roman shade or the insect screen, grasp the respective handle and carefully return it to the initial position.
- ▷ Do not keep blinds closed over a longer period of time as that can cause increased material wear.
- ▷ If the blind or the Roman shade is completely closed, exposure to direct sunlight can cause heat to accumulate between the blind/the Roman shade and the skylight. The skylight could be damaged. For that reason, close the blind/Roman shade only 2/3 of the way in direct sunlight. Open the skylight slightly or move it to ventilation position.
- ▷ Depending on the weather, close the skylights far enough to prevent moisture from entering.
- ▷ Do not climb on the skylights.



- ▷ Before commencing the journey, close the skylights.
- ▷ Before commencing the journey, check that the skylights are closed and locked.



- ▷ When leaving the vehicle, always close the skylights.

6.12.1 Skylight with snap latch



Fig. 93 Skylight with snap latch

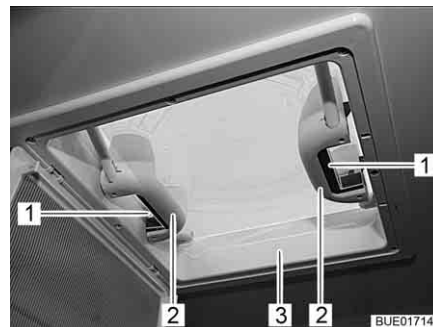


Fig. 94 Handles with snap latches

The skylight can be pushed upwards either from one side or from both sides.

Opening:

- Use handle (Fig. 93,1) to swing down the insect screen (Fig. 93,2).
- Push the snap latch (Fig. 94,1) towards the inside of the skylight (Fig. 94,3). At the same time use the handle (Fig. 94,2) to press the skylight upwards.
- Swing insect screen upwards until it latches in place.

Closing:

- Use handle (Fig. 93,1) to swing down the insect screen (Fig. 93,2).
- Using both handles (Fig. 94,2), pull down the skylight (Fig. 94,3) with force until the two snap latches (Fig. 94,1) lock into place.
- Swing insect screen upwards until it latches in place.

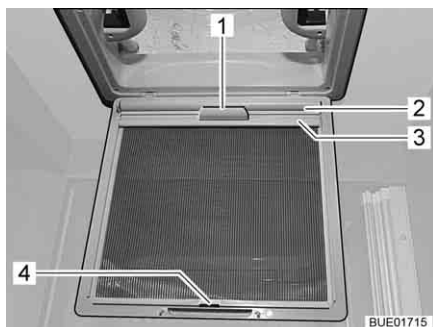


Fig. 95 Blind (skylight)

Blind Depending on the equipment, there will be a blind installed.

Closing:

- Use handle (Fig. 93,1) to swing down the insect screen (Fig. 93,2).
- Using the handle (Fig. 95,1), pull out the blind (Fig. 95,2) and hook the retainer (Fig. 95,3) into the hook (Fig. 95,4) on the insect screen.
- Swing insect screen upwards until it latches in place.

- Opening:*
- Use handle (Fig. 93,1) to swing down the insect screen (Fig. 93,2).
 - Release the retainer (Fig. 95,3) from the hook (Fig. 95,4) and, using the handle (Fig. 95,1), slowly return the blind (Fig. 95,2).
 - Swing insect screen upwards until it latches in place.

6.12.2 Heki skylight (mini and midi) (partially special equipment)

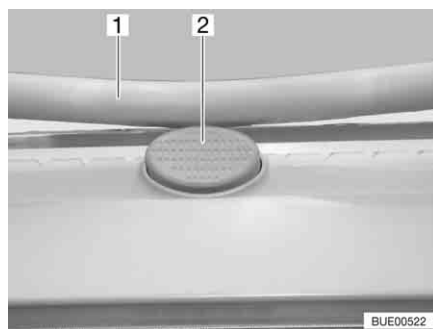


Fig. 96 Safety knob on the Heki skylight

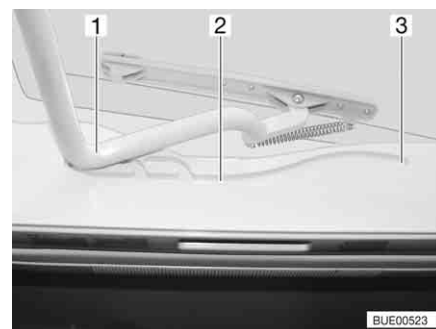


Fig. 97 Heki skylight, guide

The Heki skylight is opened on one side only.

- Opening:*
- Press the safety knob (Fig. 96,2) and pull the bar (Fig. 96,1) down with both hands.
 - Pull the bar (Fig. 97,1) in the guides (Fig. 97,2) to the rearmost position (Fig. 97,3).

- Closing:*
- Use both hands to push the bar (Fig. 97,1) slightly upwards.
 - Push the bar back in the guides.
 - Push the bar upwards with both hands until it is above the safety knob (Fig. 96,2).

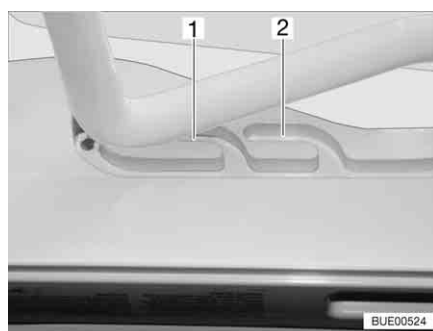


Fig. 98 Heki skylight in ventilation position

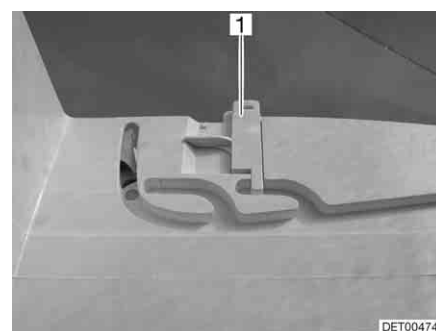


Fig. 99 Ventilation position locking mechanism

Ventilation position

The Heki skylight can be put in two ventilation positions: Bad weather position (Fig. 98,1) and central position (Fig. 98,2). Depending on the model, the skylight can be locked in the central position with both left and right latches (Fig. 99,1) on the skylight frame.

- Press the safety knob (Fig. 96,2) and pull the bar (Fig. 96,1) down with both hands.

- Pull the bar in the guides (Fig. 97,2) to the desired position.
- Push the bar slightly upwards and into the selected guide (Fig. 98,1 or 2) and lock if necessary.

Roman shade To close and open the Roman shade:

Closing: ■ Pull out Roman shade at the handle and release in the required position. The Roman shade will stay in that position.

Opening: ■ Slowly push the Roman shade at the handle to its initial position.

Insect screen To close and open the insect screen:

Closing: ■ Pull the insect screen by the handle to the opposite handle of the Roman shade.

Opening: ■ Press the rear part of the handle of the insect screen. The latch is released.
 ■ Use handle to return the insect screen slowly to its initial position.

6.12.3 Omni-Vent skylight with fan (special equipment)



- ▷ To save the battery, after one hour the fan automatically switches from level 6 down to level 1.

The skylight is equipped with an insect screen, blind and an adjustable fan for ventilation.

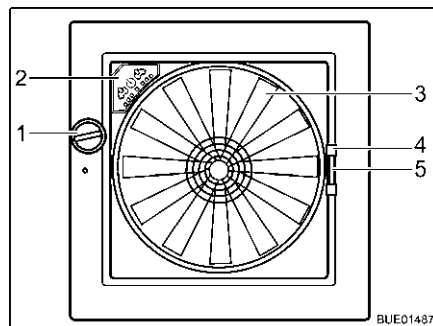


Fig. 100 Omni-Vent skylight

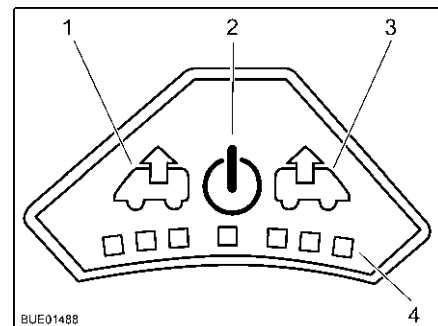


Fig. 101 Control panel for fan

Opening: ■ Turn the knob (Fig. 100,1) until the desired opening angle is reached.

Closing: ■ Turn the knob (Fig. 100,1) until the skylight is fully closed.

- Insect screen** To close and open the insect screen:
- Closing:*
- Using the handle (Fig. 100,4) pull the insect screen across to the other side of the frame.
- Opening:*
- Press the handle of the insect screen together. The latch is released.
 - Use handle to return the insect screen slowly to its initial position.
- Shade** To close and open the shade:
- Closing:*
- Press together the handle (Fig. 100,5) of the shade.
 - Pull out the shade to the desired position and release. The shade will stay in that position.
- Opening:*
- Press together the handle of the shade.
 - Slowly return the shade to its initial position.
- Fan** If the skylight is open, the interior can be vented and aerated with the 6-speed fan (Fig. 100,3). The fan is operated via the operating panel (Fig. 100,2).
- Switching on:*
- Press the On/Off button (Fig. 101,2). The fan runs in comfort mode (venting at slowest fan speed).
- Venting:*
- To increase the fan speed: Press the Vent button (Fig. 101,1). The fan speed in the venting direction increases by one level. LEDs (Fig. 101,4) show the operating levels.
 - To lower the fan speed: Press the Aerate button (Fig. 101,3). The fan speed decreases by one level.
- Aerating:*
- To increase the fan speed: Press the Aerate button (Fig. 101,3). The fan speed in the aerating direction increases by one step. LEDs (Fig. 101,4) show the operating levels.
 - To lower the fan speed: Press the Vent button (Fig. 101,1). The fan speed decreases by one level.
- Boost function:*
- Press and hold the Aerate button for approx. 3 seconds. The fan switches to the maximum aeration level and then, after approximately 5 minutes, automatically switches back to the previously selected level.
 - Press and hold the Vent button for approx. 3 seconds. The fan switches to the maximum venting level and then, after approximately 5 minutes, automatically switches back to the previously selected level.
- Switching off:*
- Press the On/Off button (Fig. 101,2). The fan stops, the LEDs go out.

6.12.4 Skyroof skylight (partially special equipment)



- ▷ When opening the skylight, ensure that there are no torsional forces. Open and close the skylight evenly.
- ▷ If the catch lever is equipped with a safety knob, press the safety knob when operating the catch lever.

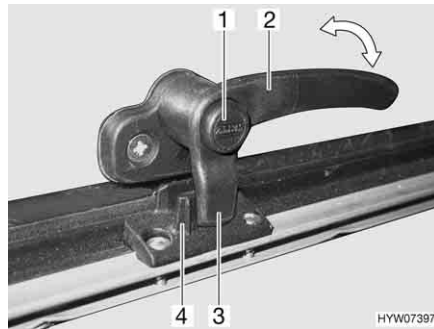


Fig. 102 Catch lever with safety knob in "closed" position

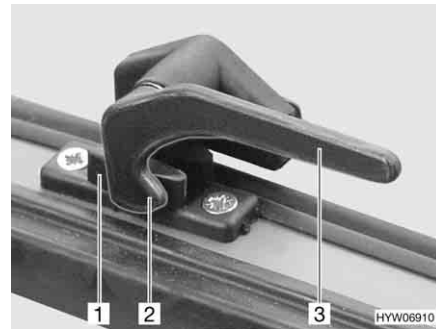


Fig. 103 Catch lever in "closed" position

Opening:

- Press and hold the security button (Fig. 102,1), if present.
- Turn all catch levers (Fig. 102,2 or Fig. 103,3) a quarter turn towards the centre of the skylight.
- Press and hold the security button, if present.

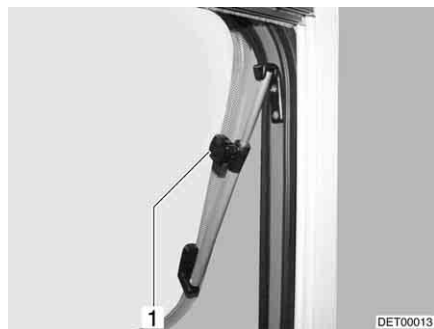


Fig. 104 Skylight with rotary hinges, open

- Open the skylight until the required position has been reached and use knurled knob (Fig. 104,1) to secure in position.

The skylight remains locked in the desired position.

Closing:

- Turn knurled knob (Fig. 104,1) until the latch is released.
- Close the skylight.
- Press and hold the security button (Fig. 102,1), if present.
- Turn all catch levers (Fig. 102,2 or Fig. 103,3) a quarter turn towards the frame. The locking catch (Fig. 102,3 or Fig. 103,2) is located on the inside of the skylight lock (Fig. 102,4 or Fig. 103,1).
- Press and hold the security button, if present.

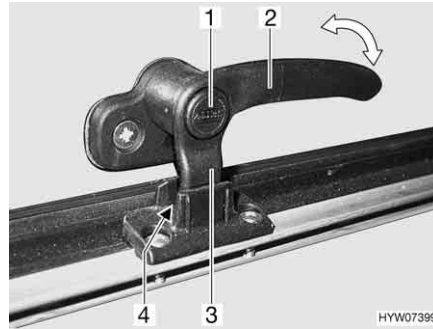


Fig. 105 Catch lever with safety knob in "continuous ventilation" position

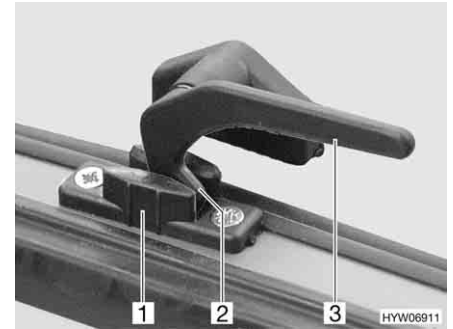


Fig. 106 Catch lever in "continuous ventilation" position

Continuous ventilation

With the catch levers, the skylight can be placed in 2 different positions:

- "Continuous ventilation" (Fig. 105 and Fig. 106)
- "Firmly closed" (Fig. 102 and Fig. 103)

To place the skylight into the "continuous ventilation" position:

- Press and hold the security button (Fig. 105,1), if present.
- Turn all catch levers (Fig. 105,2 or Fig. 106,3) a quarter turn towards the centre of the skylight.
- Slightly push the skylight outwards.
- Return all catch levers to their initial position. The locking catch (Fig. 105,3 or Fig. 106,2) has to be moved into the recess of the skylight lock (Fig. 105,4 or Fig. 106,1).
- Press and hold the security button, if present.

During the journey, the skylight may not be in the "continuous ventilation" position.

If it rains, the "continuous ventilation" skylight position could lead to splashing water penetrating the living area. Therefore, close the skylight completely.



- ▷ If the Roman shade is completely closed, heat can accumulate between the Roman shade and the glass windows when exposed to direct sunlight. The skylight could be damaged. For that reason, close the Roman shade only 2/3 of the way in direct sunlight. Open the skylight slightly or move it to ventilation position.



Fig. 107 Skyroof skylight

Roman shade The Roman shade is fitted in the frame, at the bottom.

- Closing:*
- Hold the Roman shade in the centre of the bottom rod and carefully draw it upwards.
 - Release the Roman shade at the desired position. The Roman shade will stay in that position.

- Opening:*
- Carefully return the bottom rod of the Roman shade downwards to the limit stop on the frame.

Insect screen The insect screen is fitted in the frame, at the top.

- Closing:*
- Hold the insect screen in the centre of the bottom rod and carefully pull it down.
 - Continuous adjustment of the insect screen may be made by moving the bottom rod.

- Opening:*
- Carefully return the bottom rod of the insect screen upwards to the limit stop on the frame.

6.13 Tables

Depending on the model and equipment, various types of tables may be installed. The tables' features differ in the following ways:

	Table leg	Table top	Conversion to bed foundation
Fixed table	Screwed to the floor	Shiftable, rotatable, partially enlargeable	Not possible
Suspension table	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Changeable ● Foldable ● Divisible 	Extendible	Hang the table top from the top into the bottom mounting rail <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Fold in the table leg ● Change the table leg ● Divide the table leg
Lift-off table	Lifting mechanism	Shiftable, rotatable	Lower the table



- ▷ Depending on the model, the tables can be adjusted in one or more of the aforementioned ways.

The tables' main operation is described below. The type and position of the operating controls may vary slightly.

6.13.1 Fixed table

Table leg

The table leg is screwed into the floor.

The fixed table cannot be used as a bed foundation.

Adjusting the table top

Depending on the model, the table top can be rotated, moved or extended.



Fig. 108 Unlocking of the table top



Fig. 109 Swing-out table extension

Rotating the table top:

- Rotate table top to the desired position. In order to do this, you need a little effort, because the table top rotates against the friction resistance on the pillar table leg.

Moving the table top:

- Fold lever (Fig. 108,1) downward.
- Move the table top to the desired position.
- Fold the lever back upwards.

Expanding the table:

- Pull the knob (Fig. 109,3) of the lock down and swing out the table extension (Fig. 109,2).

Reducing the table size:

- Swing the table extension (Fig. 109,2) under the table top (Fig. 109,1) until the lock latches in place audibly.

6.13.2 Suspension table

Table leg The table leg can be set up at two different heights:

- Normal table height
- Decreased table height (when converting to a bed foundation)

To lower the table, there are the following possibilities (depending on model):

- Replacing the long table leg with a short one
- Folding in one part of the table leg
- Removing one part of the table leg

Table top Depending on the model, the table top can be extended.



Fig. 110 Swing-out table extension

Expanding the table:

- Pull the knob (Fig. 110,3) of the lock down and swing out the table extension (Fig. 110,2).

Reducing the table size:

- Swing the table extension (Fig. 110,2) under the table top (Fig. 110,1) until the lock latches in place audibly.

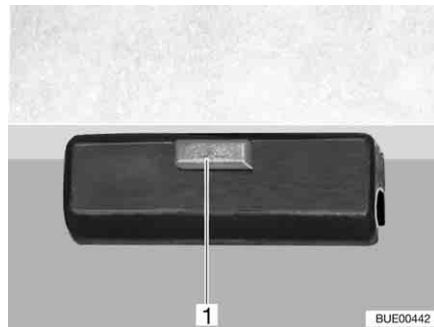


Fig. 111 Lock

Conversion to bed foundation:

- Lift the front of the table top by approx. 45°.
- Depending on the model, shorten the table leg to the conversion level.
- Release the lock (Fig. 111,1) on the table top.
- Take the table top out of the upper retainer.
- Hook the table top at a 45° angle to the supports into the lower retainer and place on the floor with the shortened table leg.
- Lock the table top.

6.13.3 Lift-off table

Table leg The table leg is screwed into the floor. The table can be lowered via a lifting mechanism to become a bed foundation.

Adjusting the table top Depending on the model, the table top can be moved both lengthwise and crosswise.

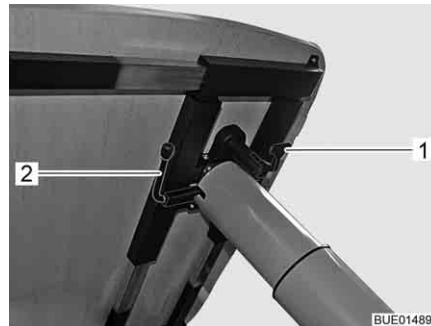


Fig. 112 Adjustment of lift-off table

Moving in a lengthways direction:

- Fold lever (Fig. 112,1) downward.
- Move the table top to the desired position.
- Fold the lever back upwards.

Moving in a crossways direction:

- Fold lever (Fig. 112,1) downward.
- Move the table top to the desired position.
- Fold the lever back upwards.



- ▷ Before lowering the table top, remove the cushions from the benches or shift the table top (depending on the installation situation).

Rotating the table top:

- Rotate table top to the desired position. In order to do this, you need a little effort, because the table top rotates against the friction resistance on the pillar table leg.

Conversion to bed foundation:

- Swivel the lever (Fig. 112,2) underneath the table top by 180° in a clockwise direction. The lifting mechanism in the table leg is unlocked.
- Push the table top downwards as far as possible and hold it in that position. Press on the centre of the table top.
- Swivel back the lever by 180° in an anticlockwise direction. The table top remains in the lowest position.

Moving the table top upwards:

- Swivel the lever (Fig. 112,2) underneath the table top by 180° in a clockwise direction. The table top moves automatically upwards to the limit stop.
- Swivel back the lever by 180° in an anticlockwise direction. The table top remains in the uppermost position.

6.13.4 Lift-off table (variant)

Table leg The table leg is screwed into the floor. The table can be lowered via a lifting mechanism to become a bed foundation.

Adjusting the table top Depending on the model, the table top can be rotated and shifted both lengthwise and crosswise.

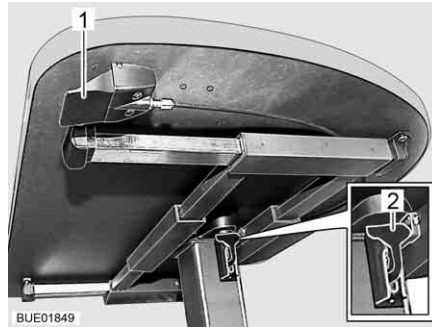


Fig. 113 Adjustment of lift-off table

Rotating the table top:

- Rotate table top to the desired position. In order to do this, you need a little effort, because the table top rotates against the friction resistance on the pillar table leg.

Moving the table top:

- Fold down the catch lever (Fig. 113,2).
- Move the table top to the desired position.
- Fold the catch lever up.

Conversion to bed foundation:

- Press up the lever (Fig. 113,1) under the table top. The lifting mechanism in the table leg is unlocked.
- Push the table top downwards as far as possible and hold it in that position. Press on the centre of the table top.
- Release the lever. The table top remains in the lowest position.

Moving the table top upwards:

- Press up the lever (Fig. 113,1) under the table top. The table top moves automatically upwards to the limit stop.
- Release the lever. The table top remains in the uppermost position.

6.13.5 Coffee table (dependent on model)

The coffee table can be lowered. The coffee table can be stored in the seat box.

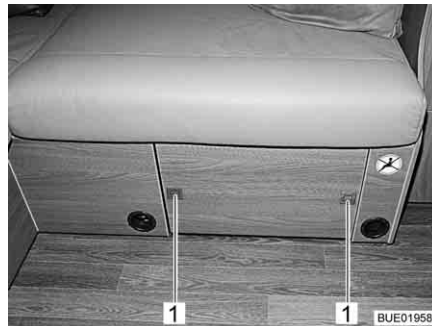


Fig. 114 Coffee table, stored

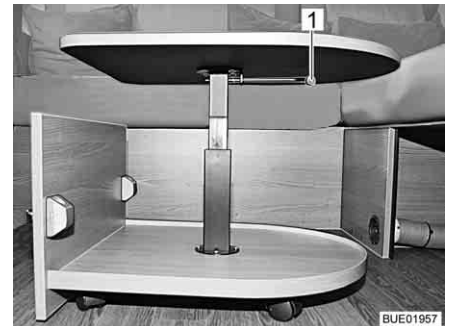


Fig. 115 Coffee table, extended

Extending the coffee table:

- Press the push buttons (Fig. 114,1) on the seat box panel. The push buttons jump out.
- Pull the coffee table out.

Adjusting the table height:

- Turn the catch lever (Fig. 115,1) 90° downwards.
- Move the table top to the desired position.
- Turn the catch lever upwards again.

Storing the coffee table:

- Turn the catch lever 90° downwards and lower the coffee table.
- Run the coffee table into the seat box.
- Press the push buttons (Fig. 114,1) in until they engage.

6.14 Beds

6.14.1 Fixed bed (gas-pressure springs)



Fig. 116 Fixed bed

A storage space is underneath the bed. Lift up the slatted frame to place items in the storage space or to empty it from the inside of the vehicle.

Opening:

- Lift the mattress forwards.
- Lift slatted frame. The gas-pressure springs (Fig. 116,1) hold the slatted frame open.

Closing:

- Press the slatted frame downwards against the resistance of the gas-pressure springs.

6.14.2 Fixed bed (adjustable head section)



- ▶ Do not let the slatted frame fall down when closing the bed!



Fig. 117 Adjustable head section

Depending on the configuration, the head section of the slatted frame can be adjusted in several stages.

Raising the head section:

- Raise the head section (Fig. 117,2) of the slatted frame to the desired position. The support (Fig. 117,1) locks automatically into place.

The head section remains locked in the required position.

Lowering the head section:

- Raise the head section (Fig. 117,2) of the slatted frame until the lock is released.
- Guide the head section downwards slowly.

6.14.3 Fixed bed, hydraulic height adjustable (special equipment)



- ▶ Lower the bed to its lowest position to sleep in it.

The height of the fixed bed can be adjusted via a crank in the rear garage. The bed can be raised before setting off. This increases the storage space under the bed.



Fig. 118 Crank in the rear garage

- Attach the crank (Fig. 118,2) onto the journal (Fig. 118,1).
- To lift the bed: Turn the crank clockwise.
To lower the bed: Turn the crank anticlockwise.
- Remove the crank and store it.

6.14.4 Fixed bed, height adjustable via strap system (special equipment)



- ▶ Lower the bed to its lowest position to sleep in it.



- ▷ Before using the bed, make sure that the lever of the locking device is in the locked position (horizontal).

The height of the fixed bed can be adjusted via a crank in the rear garage. The bed can be raised before setting off. This increases the storage space under the bed.

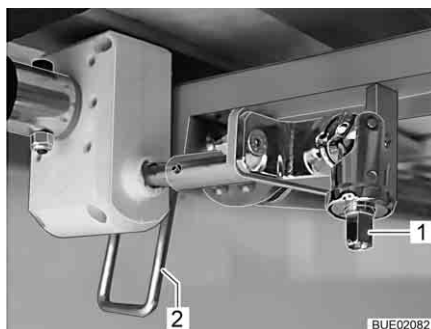


Fig. 119 Height adjustment

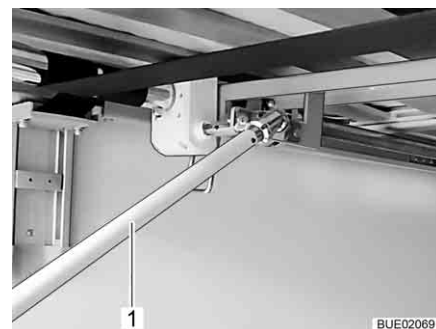


Fig. 120 Crank in the rear garage

- Attach the crank onto the journal (Fig. 119,1).
- Swivel the lever (Fig. 119,2) downwards into vertical position.
- To lift the bed: Turn the crank (Fig. 120,1) clockwise.
To lower the bed: Turn the crank (Fig. 120,1) anticlockwise.
- Swivel the lever (Fig. 119,2) upwards into horizontal position.
- Remove the crank and store it.

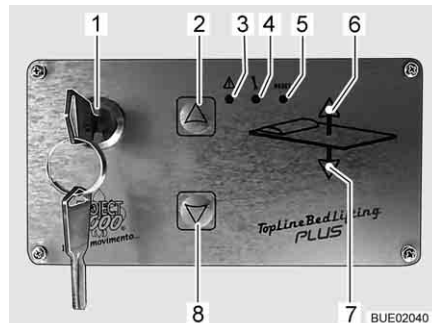
6.14.5 Pull-down bed, electrically operated (Ixeo TL)



- ▶ The maximum permitted pull-down bed load is 200 kg.
- ▶ Do not reach into the area between the bed and the side wall when lowering or raising. Danger of bruises!
- ▶ Do not lower or lift the bed when there are people using the pull-down bed.
- ▶ Only lower the bed if the lowering area is clear.
- ▶ Only lower the pull-down bed so far that it does not lie on any obstacles such as headrests, cushions or anything similar. If possible, remove such obstacles before lowering.
- ▶ Do not allow children to play with the pull-down bed.
- ▶ Store the key for the control unit such that children have no access to it.
- ▶ Only use the pull-down bed if the safety plates are inserted.
- ▶ Use separate children's beds or travel cots suitable for children.
- ▶ Never allow small children to remain in the pull-down bed without supervision.
- ▶ But in particular with regard to small children less than 6 years of age, users should ensure that they cannot fall out of the pull-down bed.



- ▷ Before starting a journey, the pull-down bed must be in the top end position. Do not stow any bulky items or bedding on the pull-down bed so that the pull-down bed can move to the top end position.



- 1 Key switch
- 2 UP button
- 3 Alarm LED
- 4 Programme LED
- 5 RESET button (without function)
- 6 UP LED
- 7 DOWN LED
- 8 DOWN button

Fig. 121 Control unit

Control unit

The pull-down bed is raised or lowered using the buttons (Fig. 121,2 and 8) on the control unit (Fig. 121). The control unit is protected against unauthorized use with the key switch (Fig. 121,1).

4 fixed positions of the pull-down bed are programmed at the factory:

Position 1: Top end position. The bed is in the ready-to-drive state.

Position 2: The bed moves down approx. 20 cm and lifts the head section.

Position 3: Top sleeping position. In this position you can use both the pull-down bed and the seating group under the pull-down bed to sleep on. This position is adjusted to the ladder (special equipment) for climbing into the pull-down bed.

Position 4: Bottom sleeping position (bottom end position). The bed is lying on the seat cushions and on the table.

Lowering the pull-down bed:

- Removing any obstacles in the area into which the pull-down bed extends: Push the seats forwards and rotate, lower backrests, remove or fold cushions if necessary.
- Switch off the lamps underneath the pull-down bed.
- Turn the key in the key switch (Fig. 121,1) through 90° clockwise. The control unit (Fig. 121) is activated. Wait until both indicator lamps (Fig. 121,6 and 7) light up in green.
- Press the arrow key (Fig. 121,8) and keep it pressed until the bed reaches the next programmed position below. The green indicator lamp (Fig. 121,7) is on while the bed is moving.
- If necessary, press the arrow key (Fig. 121,8) again to reach the next position.
- Repeat the procedure until the desired position is reached.
- Ensure that the pull-down bed is not resting on obstacles such as headrests, cushions or similar.



- ▷ To prevent accidental incorrect operation, the key can be removed from the key switch (Fig. 121,1). This necessitates the key being turned anticlockwise.

Lifting the pull-down bed:

- Switch off the reading lamps in the pull-down bed.
- Turn the key in the key switch (Fig. 121,1) through 90° clockwise. The control unit (Fig. 121) is activated. Both indicator lamps (Fig. 121,6 and 7) light up in green.
- Press the arrow key (Fig. 121,2) and keep it pressed until the bed reaches the next programmed position above. The green indicator lamp (Fig. 121,6) is on while the bed is moving.
- If necessary, press the arrow key (Fig. 121,2) again to reach the next position.
- Repeat the procedure until the desired position is reached.
- Ensure that there are no objects stuck between the roof and the pull-down bed.



- ▷ To prevent accidental incorrect operation, the key can be removed from the key switch (Fig. 121,1). This necessitates the key being turned anticlockwise.

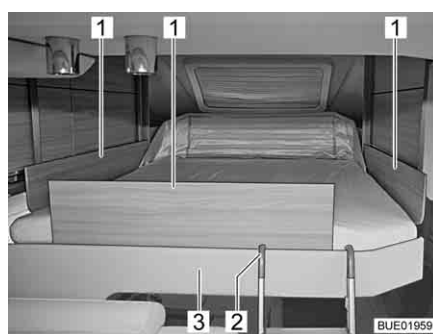


Fig. 122 Pull-down bed with safety plates

Safety plates

The safety plates are only required in the top sleeping position. The safety plates are located underneath the mattress in the pull-down bed. Remove the safety plates before using the pull-down bed but do not insert them until persons are already in the pull-down bed.

Inserting the safety plates:

- Bring out the safety plates under the mattress and place them on the pull-down bed.
- Climb into the pull-down bed via the access ladder.
- Insert the safety plates (Fig. 122,1) between the mattress and the bed surround (Fig. 122,3).



- ▷ Before the pull-down bed is pushed up: Remove the safety plates again and place them under the mattress.

Access ladder (special equipment)

If the pull-down bed is in the top sleeping position, only access the pull-down bed using the access ladder.

Attaching:

- Hook both bows of the access ladder (Fig. 122,2) into the bed surround (Fig. 122,3).

Storing away:

- Release the access ladder (Fig. 122,2) from the bed surround (Fig. 122,3).
- Store the access ladder securely.

Emergency operation

If it is no longer possible to move the pull-down bed with the arrow keys (Fig. 121,2 and 8), first of all check the fuse Reserve 3 on the transformer/rectifier (see section 8.9.1). If the fuse is okay and it is still not possible to move the pull-down bed, the pull-down bed can be operated manually.

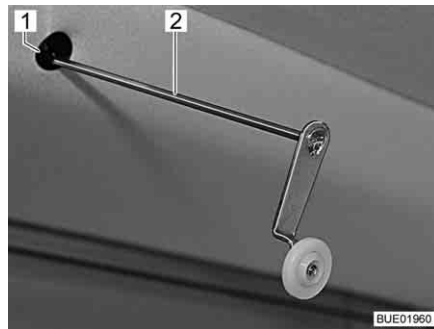


Fig. 123 Crank for emergency operation

- Remove the mattress from the pull-down bed.
- Insert the crank (Fig. 123,2) provided or an Allen wrench into the accommodation (Fig. 123,1) on the motor. The holder is in the cut-out in the surround at the top left of the pull-down bed.
- Turn crank or Allen wrench manually until the pull-down bed has reached the upper parking position.



- ▷ For instructions on troubleshooting, see section 14.12.

6.14.6 Pull-down bed, electrically operated (Ixeo Time, Lyseo TD)



- ▶ The maximum permitted pull-down bed load is 200 kg.
- ▶ Do not reach into the area between the bed and the side wall when lowering or raising. Danger of bruises!
- ▶ Do not lower or lift the bed when there are people using the pull-down bed.



- ▶ Only lower the bed if the lowering area is clear.
- ▶ Only lower the pull-down bed so far that it does not lie on any obstacles such as headrests, cushions or anything similar. If possible, remove such obstacles before lowering.
- ▶ Do not allow children to play with the pull-down bed.
- ▶ Store the key for the control unit such that children have no access to it.
- ▶ Only use the pull-down bed, if the safety net is set up.
- ▶ Use separate children's beds or travel cots suitable for children.
- ▶ Never allow small children to remain in the pull-down bed without supervision.
- ▶ But in particular with regard to small children less than 6 years of age, users should ensure that they cannot fall out of the pull-down bed.



- ▷ Before starting a journey, the pull-down bed must be in the top end position. Do not stow any bulky items or bedding on the pull-down bed so that the pull-down bed can move to the top end position.

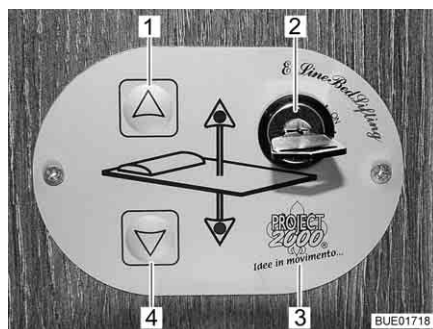


Fig. 124 Control unit

Control unit

The pull-down bed is raised or lowered using the buttons (Fig. 124,1 and 4) on the control unit (Fig. 124,3). The control unit is protected against unauthorized use with the key switch (Fig. 124,2).

The pull-down bed's height may be adjusted steplessly.

Lowering the pull-down bed:

- Removing any obstacles in the area into which the pull-down bed extends: Push the seats forwards and rotate; remove or fold cushions if necessary.
- Switch off the lamps underneath the pull-down bed.
- Turn the key in the key switch (Fig. 124,2) by 90° in a clockwise direction to position "On". The control unit (Fig. 124,3) is activated.
- Press the arrow key (Fig. 124,4) and keep it pressed until the pull-down bed has moved down into the desired position.
- Ensure that the pull-down bed is not resting on obstacles such as headrests, cushions or similar.

Lifting the pull-down bed:

- Switch off the reading lamps in the pull-down bed.
- Press the arrow key (Fig. 124,1) and keep it pressed until the pull-down bed has moved down into the final upper position.
- Ensure that there are no objects stuck between the roof and the pull-down bed.

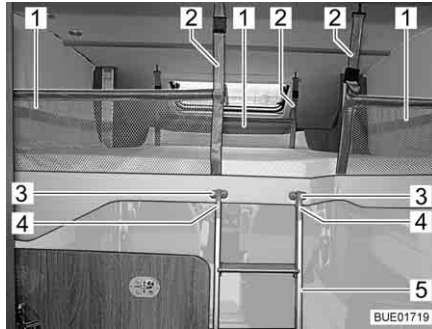


Fig. 125 Pull-down bed complete with applied safety net



Fig. 126 Pull-down bed, completely lowered (dependent on model)

Safety net

The three safety nets (Fig. 125,2) with their retaining belts are located underneath the mattress in the pull-down bed. Only use the safety nets if persons are already in the pull-down bed.



▷ If the pull-down bed is lowered below 1 m (Fig. 126), it will not be possible to set up the safety nets.

Setting up:

- Attach retaining belts (Fig. 125,1) to the hooks on the ceiling.

Access ladder

If the pull-down bed is raised over 1 m, only access the pull-down bed using the access ladder provided.

Attaching:

- Hook both bows (Fig. 125,4) of the access ladder (Fig. 125,5) into the holders (Fig. 125,3).

Storing away:

- Release the access ladder (Fig. 125,5) from the holders (Fig. 125,3).
- Store the access ladder securely.

Emergency operation

If it is no longer possible to move the pull-down bed with the arrow keys (Fig. 124,1 and 4), first of all check the fuse in the front wall-mounted cupboard on the left-hand side of the vehicle or at Reserve 3 on the transformer/rectifier (see section 8.9.1). If the fuse is okay and it is still not possible to move the pull-down bed, the pull-down bed can be operated manually.



Fig. 127 Access to drive

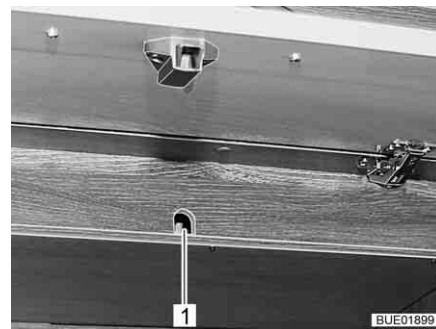


Fig. 128 Access to drive (alternative)

- If present, remove the cover from the access opening (Fig. 127,1 or Fig. 128,1).

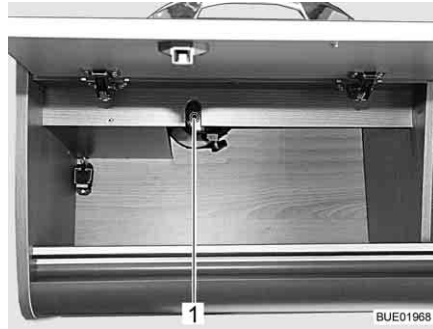


Fig. 129 Access to drive (Lyseo)

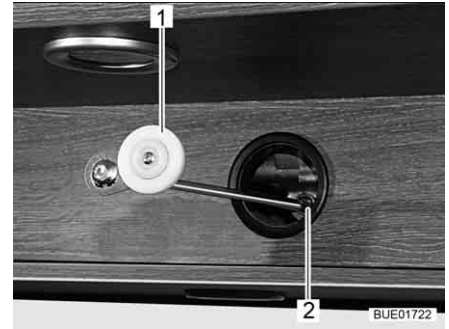


Fig. 130 Mechanical operation, drive

- If the holder (Fig. 129,1) for the drive is installed in the wall-mounted cupboard: open the wall-mounted cupboard.
- Remove mattress from pull-down bed and reduce the load of the storage cupboards to a minimum.
- Insert the crank (Fig. 130,1) provided or an Allen wrench into the accommodation on the motor (Fig. 130,2 or Fig. 129,1).
- Turn crank or Allen wrench manually until the pull-down bed has reached the upper parking position.

6.14.7 Pull-down bed at the rear, electrically operated (Lyseo TD) (special equipment)



- ▶ Before setting off, always move the pull-down bed into the top end position.
- ▶ The maximum permitted pull-down bed load is 200 kg.
- ▶ Do not reach into the area between the bed and the side wall when lowering or raising. Danger of bruises!
- ▶ Do not lower or lift the bed when there are people using the pull-down bed.
- ▶ Only lower the bed if the lowering area is clear.
- ▶ Only lower the pull-down bed so far that it does not lie on any obstacles such as headrests, cushions or anything similar. If possible, remove such obstacles before lowering.
- ▶ Do not allow children to play with the pull-down bed.
- ▶ Store the key for the control unit such that children have no access to it.
- ▶ Use separate children's beds or travel cots suitable for children.
- ▶ Never allow small children to remain in the pull-down bed without supervision.
- ▶ But in particular with regard to small children less than 6 years of age, users should ensure that they cannot fall out of the pull-down bed.



- ▷ Before starting a journey, the pull-down bed must be in the top end position. Do not stow any bulky items or bedding on the pull-down bed so that the pull-down bed can move to the top end position.

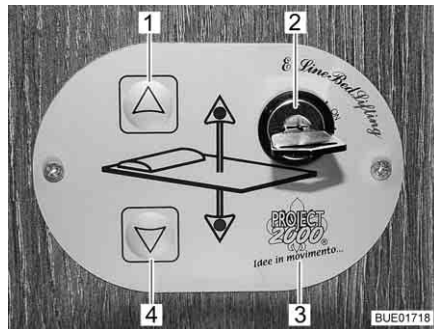


Fig. 131 Control unit

Control unit

The pull-down bed is raised or lowered using the buttons (Fig. 131,1 and 4) on the control unit (Fig. 131,3). The control unit is protected against unauthorized use with the key switch (Fig. 131,2).



Fig. 132 Storage compartment and removed back cushion



Fig. 133 Pull-down bed at the rear, lowered

Lowering the pull-down bed:

- Remove back cushion (Fig. 132,1) of the rear seating group.
- Remove any other obstacles in the area into which the pull-down bed extends, e.g. bring the television into driving position.
- Switch off the lamps underneath the pull-down bed.
- Turn the key in the key switch (Fig. 131,2) through 90° clockwise. The control unit (Fig. 131,3) is activated.
- Press the arrow key (Fig. 131,4) and keep it pressed until the pull-down bed has moved down into the desired position.
- Make sure that the pull-down bed is not resting on obstacles such as cushions or similar.

Lifting the pull-down bed:

- Switch off the reading lamps in the pull-down bed.
- Press the arrow key (Fig. 131,1) and keep it pressed until the pull-down bed has moved down into the final upper position.
- Ensure that there are no objects stuck between the roof and the pull-down bed.

Access assistance

The storage compartment (Fig. 132,2) can be used as an access assistance.

Emergency operation

If it is no longer possible to move the pull-down bed with the arrow keys (Fig. 131,1 and 4), first of all check the fuse in the rear wall-mounted cupboard (Fig. 134,1). If the fuse is okay and it is still not possible to move the pull-down bed, the pull-down bed can be operated manually.

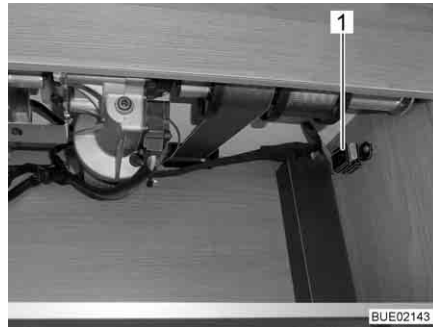


Fig. 134 Fuse

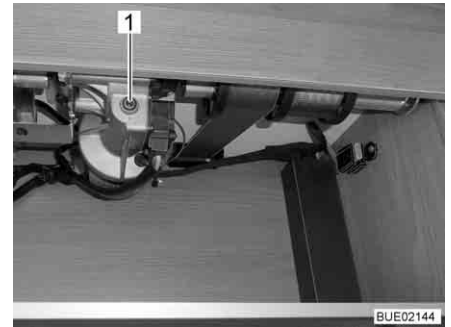


Fig. 135 Access to drive

- Remove mattress from pull-down bed and reduce the load of the storage cupboards to a minimum.
- Insert the crank provided or an Allen wrench into the accommodation on the motor (Fig. 135,1).
- Turn crank or Allen wrench manually until the pull-down bed has reached the upper parking position.

6.15 Converting seating groups for sleeping

The seating groups installed in the vehicles can be divided into two categories:

- Individual benches which can be converted into the guest bed including the driver's seat.
- Seating groups with a lateral individual seat or lateral bench seat, which can be converted into a transverse bed.

The following table gives an overview of the seating groups installed in the different models and names the section in which the bed conversion is described.



▷ The ground plans for the individual models are shown in chapter 16.

Nexxo Time Edition 30

Model	Seating group	Table type	Bed	Section
T 569	Individual bench	Suspension table with rotating platform	Guest bed	6.15.1
T 660 dinette	Individual bench with lateral seat	Suspension table with rotating platform	Transverse bed	6.15.2
T 690 dinette	Individual bench	Suspension table with rotating platform	Guest bed	6.15.1

Ixeo Time Edition 30

Model	Seating group	Table type	Bed	Section
IT 590	L-seating group with lateral bench	Lift-off table	Transverse bed	6.15.4
IT 710 dinette	Individual bench with lateral seat	Suspension table with rotating platform	Transverse bed	6.15.2
IT 710 L-SG	L-seating group with lateral seat	Lift-off table	Transverse bed	6.15.3
IT 726 dinette	Individual bench with lateral seat	Suspension table with rotating platform	Transverse bed	6.15.2
IT 726 L-SG	L-seating group with lateral seat	Lift-off table	Transverse bed	6.15.3
IT 734 dinette	Individual bench with lateral seat	Suspension table with rotating platform	Transverse bed	6.15.2
IT 734 L-SG	L-seating group with lateral seat	Lift-off table	Transverse bed	6.15.3

Travel Van Edition 30

T 590	Individual bench	Suspension table with rotating platform	Guest bed	6.15.1
T 620	Individual bench	Suspension table with rotating platform	Guest bed	6.15.1

Ixeo TL

IT 640	L-seating group with lateral bench	Lift-off table	Transverse bed	6.15.8
IT 680	L-seating group with lateral bench	Lift-off table	Transverse bed	6.15.5
IT 728	L-seating group with lateral bench	Lift-off table	Transverse bed	6.15.4
IT 734	L-seating group with lateral bench	Lift-off table	Transverse bed	6.15.6

Lyseo TD/Harmony Line

590	L-seating group with lateral seat	Lift-off table	Transverse bed	6.15.5
690 dinette	Individual bench with lateral seat	Suspension table	Transverse bed	6.15.7
690 L-SG	L-seating group with lateral seat	Lift-off table	Transverse bed	6.15.3
700 dinette	Individual bench with lateral seat	Suspension table	Transverse bed	6.15.7
700 L-SG	L-seating group with lateral seat	Lift-off table	Transverse bed	6.15.3
710 dinette	Individual bench with lateral seat	Suspension table	Transverse bed	6.15.2
710 L-SG	L-seating group with lateral seat	Lift-off table	Transverse bed	6.15.3
728 dinette	Individual bench with lateral seat	Suspension table	Transverse bed	6.15.7

Model	Seating group	Table type	Bed	Section
728 L-SG	L-seating group with lateral seat	Lift-off table	Transverse bed	6.15.3
734 dinette	Individual bench with lateral seat	Suspension table	Transverse bed	6.15.2
734 L-SG	L-seating group with lateral seat	Lift-off table	Transverse bed	6.15.3
744 dinette	Individual bench with lateral seat	Suspension table	Transverse bed	6.15.7
744 L-SG	L-seating group with lateral seat	Lift-off table	Transverse bed	6.15.3
745 dinette	Individual bench with lateral seat	Suspension table	Transverse bed	6.15.7
745 L-SG	L-seating group with lateral seat	Lift-off table	Transverse bed	6.15.3



- ▷ The following representations are partly valid for different vehicles. Therefore, the length, width and form of individual cushions may differ from the ones shown here.

6.15.1 Conversion of semi-dinette into guest bed

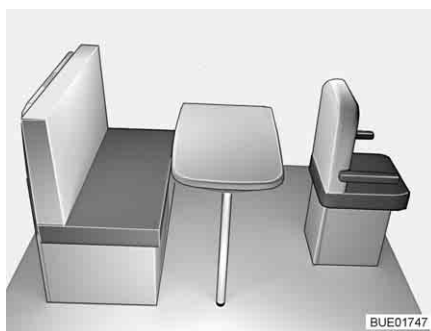


Fig. 136 Prior to conversion

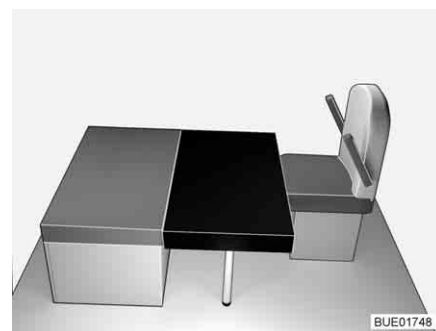


Fig. 137 After conversion

- Rotate the driver's seat towards the table.
- Push driver's seat fully forward (away from the table).
- Convert the suspension table into a bed foundation (see section 6.13).
- Remove the back cushion of the bench and lay it aside.
- Place the rectangular additional cushion on the table (in front of the seat cushion of the bench, see Fig. 137). When doing so, the cutout in the additional cushion is located on the frontal supporting wall.
- Push the driver's seat towards the table until a closed lying surface is created.

6.15.2 Conversion semi-dinette into transverse bed (with additional cushion table)

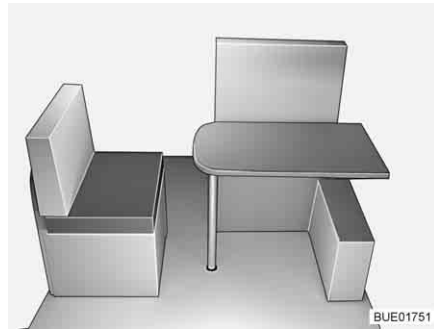


Fig. 138 Prior to conversion



Fig. 139 After conversion

- Convert the suspension table into a bed foundation (see section 6.13).
- Remove the back cushion of the bench and lay it aside.
- Push the cover of the lateral seat/lateral bench towards the centre of the vehicle as far as it will go.
- Place the bed widening onto the cover of the lateral seat/lateral bench and the table and secure it with elastic buffers.
- Place the rectangular additional cushion on the table (in front of the seat cushion of the bench). When doing so, the cutout in the additional cushion is located on the frontal supporting wall.
- Place the back cushion of the lateral seat/lateral bench on the table (between the seat cushion of the lateral seat/lateral bench and the additional cushion, see Fig. 139).
- Fully unfold the support underneath the additional cushion with reinforcement plate.
- Hook the hooks on the additional cushion with reinforcement plate into the holders on the bench seat and place the support on the floor.

6.15.3 Conversion L-seating group into transverse bed (with additional cushion table)

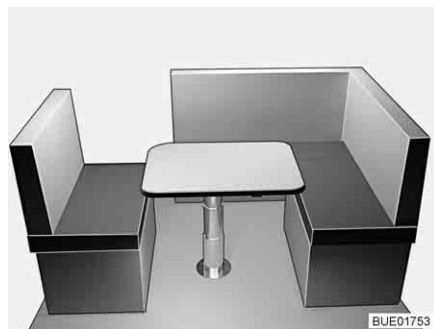


Fig. 140 Prior to conversion

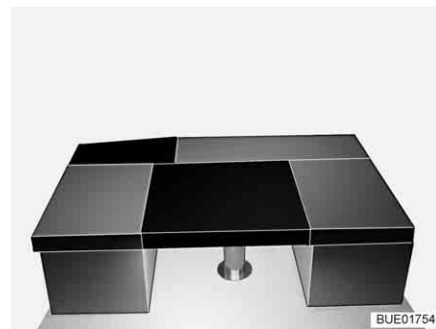


Fig. 141 After conversion

- Convert the lift-off table to a bed foundation (see section 6.13).
- Lay aside the back cushions of the benches.
- Push the cover of the lateral seat/lateral bench towards the centre of the vehicle as far as it will go.
- Place the bed widening onto the cover of the lateral seat/lateral bench and the table and secure it with elastic buffers.

- Place the rectangular additional cushion on the table (between the seat cushions of the benches, see Fig. 141).
- Fully unfold the support underneath the additional cushion with reinforcement plate.
- Hook the hooks on the additional cushion with reinforcement plate into the holders on the bench seat and place the support on the floor.

6.15.4 Conversion L-seating group into transverse bed (without additional cushion table)

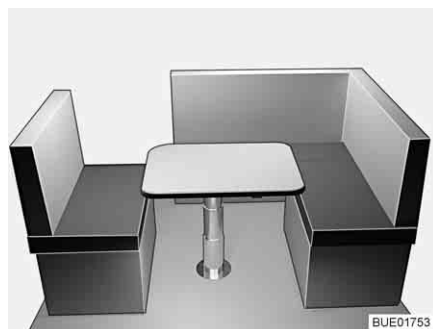


Fig. 142 Prior to conversion

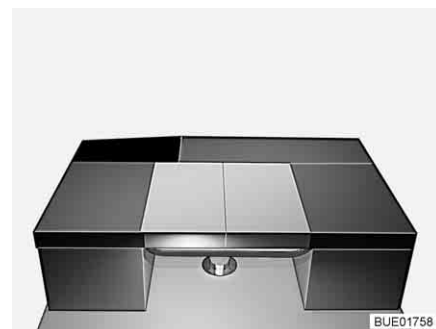


Fig. 143 After conversion

- Convert the lift-off table to a bed foundation (see section 6.13).
- Push the cover of the lateral bench towards the centre of the vehicle as far as it will go.
- Place the back cushion of the bench longitudinally on the table.
- Place the back cushion of the lateral bench longitudinally on the table (see Fig. 143).
- Fully unfold the support underneath the additional cushion with reinforcement plate.
- Hook the hooks on the additional cushion with reinforcement plate into the holders on the bench seat and place the support on the floor.

6.15.5 Conversion L-seating group into transverse bed (Ixeo IT 680, Lyseo TD 590)

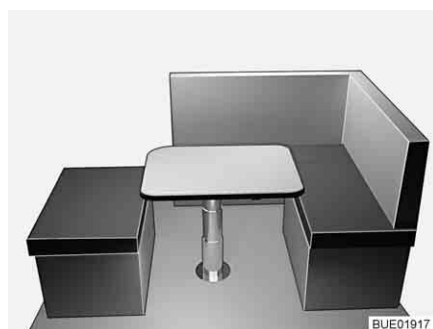


Fig. 144 Prior to conversion

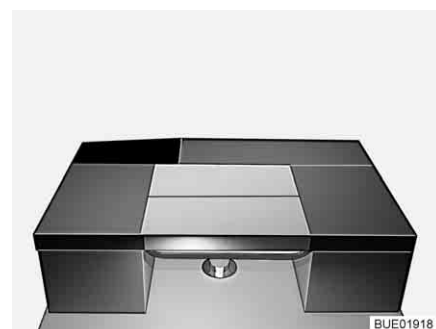


Fig. 145 After conversion

- Convert the lift-off table to a bed foundation (see section 6.13).
- Place the back cushion of the bench horizontally onto the table (see Fig. 145).
- Place the back cushion of the side bench of the L-seating group horizontally onto the table.

- Fully unfold the support underneath the additional cushion with reinforcement plate.
- Hook the hooks on the additional cushion with reinforcement plate into the holders on the bench seat and place the support on the floor.

6.15.6 Conversion L-seating group into transverse bed (Ixeo IT 734)

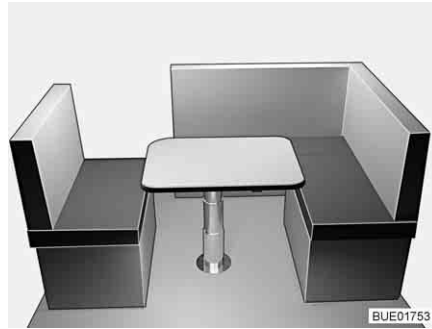


Fig. 146 Prior to conversion



Fig. 147 After conversion

- Convert the lift-off table to a bed foundation (see section 6.13).
- Push the cover of the lateral bench towards the centre of the vehicle as far as it will go.
- Place the additional cushion horizontally onto the table (see Fig. 147).
- Place the back cushion of the individual bench horizontally onto the table.
- Fully unfold the support underneath the additional cushion with reinforcement plate.
- Hook the hooks on the additional cushion with reinforcement plate into the holders on the bench seat and place the support on the floor.

6.15.7 Conversion semi-dinette into transverse bed (with additional cushion table and bed widening)

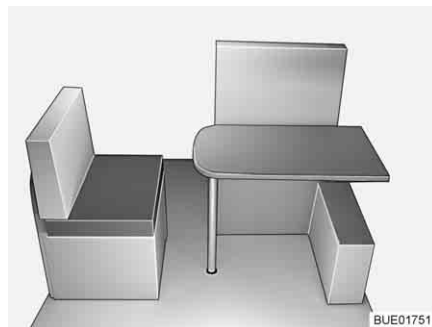


Fig. 148 Prior to conversion

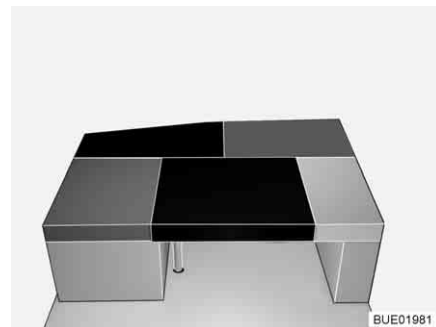


Fig. 149 After conversion

- Convert the suspension table into a bed foundation (see section 6.13).
- Remove the back cushion of the bench and lay it aside.
- Push the cover of the lateral seat towards the centre of the vehicle as far as it will go.
- Place the back cushion of the lateral seat on the table.
- Place the rectangular additional cushion on the table (between the seat cushion and the back cushion of the lateral seat, see Fig. 149).

- Fully unfold the support underneath the additional cushion with reinforcement plate.
- Hook the hooks on the additional cushion with reinforcement plate into the holders on the bench and place the support on the floor.

6.15.8 Conversion L-seating group into transverse bed (Ixeo IT 640)

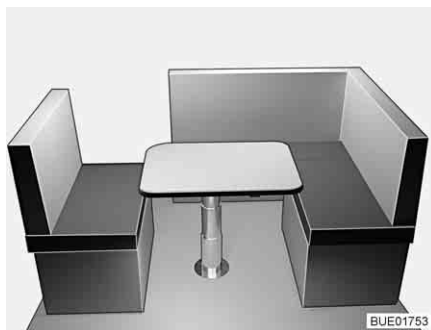


Fig. 150 Prior to conversion



Fig. 151 After conversion

- Convert the lift-off table to a bed foundation (see section 6.13).
- Lay aside the back cushions of the benches.
- Push the cover of the lateral seat/lateral bench towards the centre of the vehicle as far as it will go.
- Place the rectangular additional cushion on the table (between the seat cushions of the benches, see Fig. 151).

6.15.9 Lying surface of single beds (special equipment)

The two single beds in the rear can be converted into a combined lying surface.

The additional cushions are stored in a cabinet underneath the bed.



Fig. 152 Additional cushion

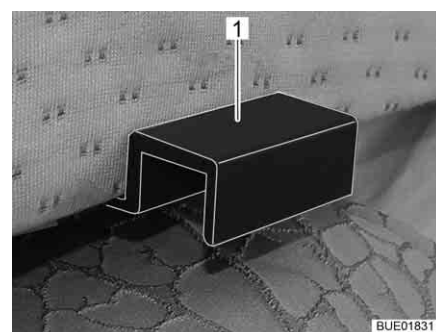


Fig. 153 Additional cushion holder

- Take the additional cushion out of the cabinet.
- Hook the additional cushion (Fig. 152,1) with the holders (Fig. 153,1) into the panels of the single beds so that a closed lying surface is created.

6.16 Shower connection point for external shower (special equipment)



- ▶ Only use the external shower if there is a gap of at least 1.20 m between the shower and the nearest electrical device or connection. Risk of electric shock!



- ▷ If decommissioned for a longer time or if there is a risk of frost, drain the water system.

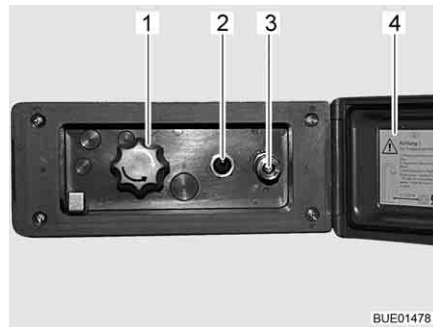


Fig. 154 External shower connection point

Connecting an external shower:

- Unlock and open the cover (Fig. 154,4).
- Attach hose of the external shower to the quick closure (Fig. 154,3).

Using the shower:

- Switch on the water pump using the switch (Fig. 154,2).
- Adjust the water temperature with the rotary knob (Fig. 154,1) as desired.
- Switch off the water pump using the switch (Fig. 154,2).

Shutting off the shower connection point:

- Switch off the water pump using the switch (Fig. 154,2).
- Disconnect the hose from the quick closure. The quick closure is equipped with a check valve to prevent any further water from escaping.
- Close the cover (Fig. 154,4) and lock with key.

Emptying:

- Attach hose of external shower to quick closure. The check valve is opened and the connections can run dry.
- Turn knob (Fig. 154,1) to the centre position.
- Empty the water system (see section 10.2.7).

Chapter overview

This chapter contains instructions regarding the gas system of the vehicle. The operation of the gas operation appliances of the vehicle is described in chapter 9.

7.1 General



- ▶ The operator of the gas system is responsible for the performance of recurring inspections and for complying with the maintenance intervals.
- ▶ Before commencing the journey, when leaving the vehicle or when gas equipment is not in use, close all gas isolator taps and the main isolator tap on the gas bottle.
- ▶ All gas-operated devices (heater, cooker, oven, grill, refrigerator - depending on the equipment) must be switched off for refuelling, on ferries or in the garage. Danger of explosion!
- ▶ Do not use gas-operated devices in closed spaces (e.g. garages). Danger of poisoning and suffocation!
- ▶ Only have the gas system maintained, repaired or altered by an authorised specialist workshop.
- ▶ Have the gas system checked by an authorised specialist workshop according to the national regulations before commissioning. This also applies for not registered vehicles. For modifications to the gas system have the gas system immediately checked by an authorised specialist workshop.
- ▶ The gas pressure regulator, the gas tubes, and the exhaust gas pipes must also be inspected. The gas pressure regulator and the gas tubes must be replaced observing the nationally defined deadlines (the latest after 10 years). The vehicle owner is responsible for seeing that this is carried out.
- ▶ In case of a defect of the gas system (gas odour, high gas consumption) there is danger of explosion! Close regulator tap on the gas bottle immediately. Open doors and windows and ventilate well.
- ▶ If the gas system is defective: Do not smoke; do not ignite any open flames, and do not operate electric switches (light switches etc.). Check the tightness of gas-conducting parts and lines with leakage search spray. Do not check with an open flame.
- ▶ Only the stipulated devices may be connected to internal connections. Do not operate any device outside the vehicle if it is connected to an internal connector.
- ▶ Before using the cooker make sure that there is sufficient ventilation. Open a window or the skylight.
- ▶ Do not use gas-operated cooking and baking facilities for heating purposes.



- ▶ If there are several gas devices, each gas device must have its own gas isolator tap. If individual gas devices are not in use, close the respective gas isolator tap.
- ▶ Ignition safety valves must close within 1 minute after the gas flame has extinguished. A clicking sound is audible. Check function from time to time.
- ▶ The built-in gas devices are exclusively meant for use with propane or butane gas or a mixture of both. The gas pressure regulator as well as all built-in gas devices are designed for a gas pressure of 30 mbar.
- ▶ Propane gas is capable of gasification up to -42 °C, whereas butane gas gasifies at 0 °C. Below these temperatures no gas pressure is available. Butane gas is unsuitable for use in winter.
- ▶ Due to its function and construction, the gas bottle compartment is a space which is open to the exterior. Never cover or block up the standard forced ventilations. Otherwise gas that is emitted can not be diverted to the outside.
- ▶ The gas bottle compartment must not be used as storage space.
- ▶ Secure the gas bottle compartment against unauthorised access. To do this, lock the compartment.
- ▶ The regulator tap on the gas bottle must be accessible.
- ▶ Only connect gas-operated devices (e.g. gas grill) which have been designed for a gas pressure of 30 mbar.
- ▶ The exhaust gas pipe must be fitted tightly to the heating system and to the vent and must be sealed. The exhaust gas pipe must not show any evidence of damage.
- ▶ Exhaust fumes must be able to escape into the atmosphere unhindered and fresh air must be able to enter unhindered. For this reason, keep the exhaust pipe and intake openings clean and unobstructed (e.g. free from snow and ice). For this reason, no snow walls or aprons may lie against the vehicle.

7.2 Gas bottles



- ▶ Handle full or emptied gas bottles outside the vehicle only with closed regulator tap and attached protective cap.
- ▶ Gas bottles are only to be transported within the designated gas bottle compartment.
- ▶ Place the gas bottles in vertical position in the gas bottle compartment.
- ▶ Fasten the gas bottles so that they are unable to turn or tilt.
- ▶ Connect the gas tube to the gas bottle without tension.
- ▶ If the gas bottles are not connected to the gas tube, always place the protective cap on top.
- ▶ Close the regulator tap on the gas bottle before the gas pressure regulator or gas tube are removed from the gas bottle.
- ▶ Depending on the connection, unscrew the gas tube from the gas bottle and screw it on the gas bottle again by hand or using a suitable special spanner. The screw connection on the gas bottle generally has a left-hand thread. **Do not** tighten too firmly.
- ▶ Only use special gas pressure regulators with a safety valve designed for vehicle use. Other gas pressure regulators are not permitted and cannot meet the demanding requirements.
- ▶ Use only 11 kg or 5 kg gas bottles. Camping gas bottles with built-in check valve (blue bottle with max. 2.5 or 3 kg content) are can be used in exceptional cases with a safety valve.
- ▶ Use the shortest possible tube lengths (150 cm max.) for external gas bottles.
- ▶ Never block the floor ventilation openings below the gas bottles.



- ▷ With some models, the gas bottle compartment is located right next to the conversion door. With these models, only open the gas bottle compartment when the conversion door is closed. Danger from damages.

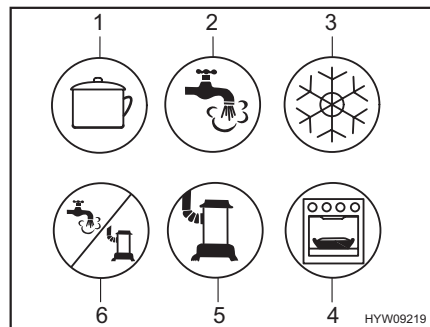


- ▷ The screw connections on the gas bottles generally have a left-hand thread.
- ▷ For gas-operated units the gas pressure must be reduced to 30 mbar.
- ▷ Connect gas pressure regulator complete with safety valve directly to bottle valve.
The gas pressure regulator reduces the gas pressure in the gas bottle down to the operating pressure of the gas devices.
- ▷ For filling and connecting the gas bottles in Europe the accessories shops have corresponding Euro filling sets and Euro bottle sets.
- ▷ Information available at the dealers or service centre.
- ▷ For information on the gas supply in Europe see chapter 17.

The gas pressure regulator is permanently installed in the gas bottle compartment. The gas bottle is connected to the gas pressure regulator via a high-pressure gas hose.

The high-pressure gas hoses and their connections are different in the various countries. The accessories shop offers the respective country-specific models and adapters.

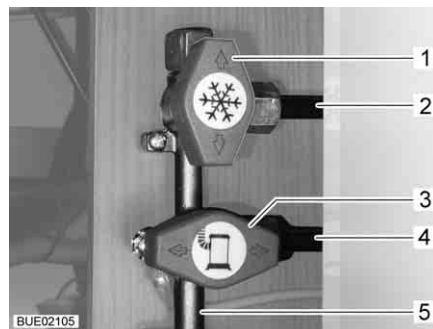
7.3 Gas isolator taps



- 1 Cooker
- 2 Hot water
- 3 Refrigerator
- 4 Oven/grill
- 5 Heater
- 6 Hot water/heater

Fig. 155 Possible symbols for the gas isolator taps

A gas isolator tap (Fig. 155) for every gas device is built into the vehicle. The gas isolator taps are located in the vehicle at different positions, and can also be fitted separately. Generally, you will have access to the gas isolator taps in the kitchen unit opening a door or a drawer.



- 1 Gas isolator tap for refrigerator closed
- 2 Pipe to refrigerator
- 3 Heater gas isolator tap open
- 4 Pipe to heater
- 5 Gas pipe from gas bottle

Fig. 156 Gas isolator taps position (example)

- Opening:**
- Position the gas isolator tap of the corresponding gas device parallel (Fig. 156,3) to the pipe (Fig. 156,4) leading to the gas device.
- Closing:**
- Position the gas isolator tap of the corresponding gas device transverse (Fig. 156,1) to the pipe (Fig. 156,2) leading to the gas device.

7.4 External gas connection (special equipment)



- ▶ If the external gas connection is not in use, always close the gas isolator tap.
- ▶ Only gas appliances with a suitable adapter should be connected to the external gas connection.
- ▶ Connect only external gas appliances which are designed for an operation pressure of 30 mbar.
- ▶ Once you have made the connection and opened the gas isolator tap, make sure that no gas is escaping at the connection point. If there is a leak in the external gas connection, gas will escape into the open air. Immediately close the gas isolator tap and the regulator tap on the gas bottle. Have the external gas connection checked by an authorised specialist workshop.
- ▶ When connecting an external gas appliance, make sure that there is nothing near the external gas connection that could cause a spark.
- ▶ Only connect a gas appliance to the external gas connection. Do not use the external gas connection as supply (connection of an additional gas bottle).
- ▶ Do not use the external gas connection to fill gas bottles. Observe the information stickers on the external gas connection.

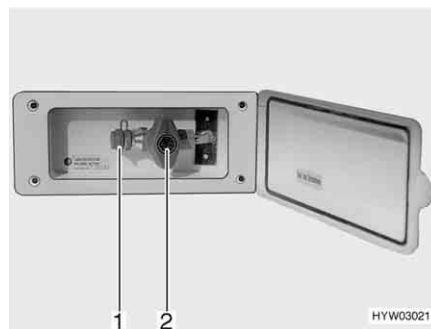


Fig. 157 External gas connection (gas isolator tap closed)

The external gas connection (Fig. 157) is located on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

- Connect the external gas device to the connection point (Fig. 157,1).
- Open the gas isolator tap (Fig. 157,2).

7.5 Gas bottle switching facility (special equipment)



- ▶ If the vehicle is equipped with a gas bottle switching facility without Crash Protection Unit (CPU), it is not permitted to operate gas devices during the journey. Close the regulator taps on the gas bottles and the gas isolator taps before setting off.



- ▷ When the vehicle is equipped with the crash protection unit the living area heater may be operated during the journey.
- ▷ The gas bottle switching facility and the hose lines shall be changed at the latest 10 years after manufacturing date. The operator is responsible for this.

The automatic switching facility automatically switches gas supply from the primary bottle to the reserve bottle as soon as the primary bottle is either empty or no longer ready for operation. The gas appliances may still continue operation. The switching facility is suitable for all commercial gas bottles from 3 kg to 33 kg.

Facility without Crash Protection Unit (CPU)

The gas bottle switching facility consists of a combined gas pressure regulator with reversing valve and indicator (Fig. 158,3). The gas bottle switching facility is installed between the two gas tubes (Fig. 158,1).

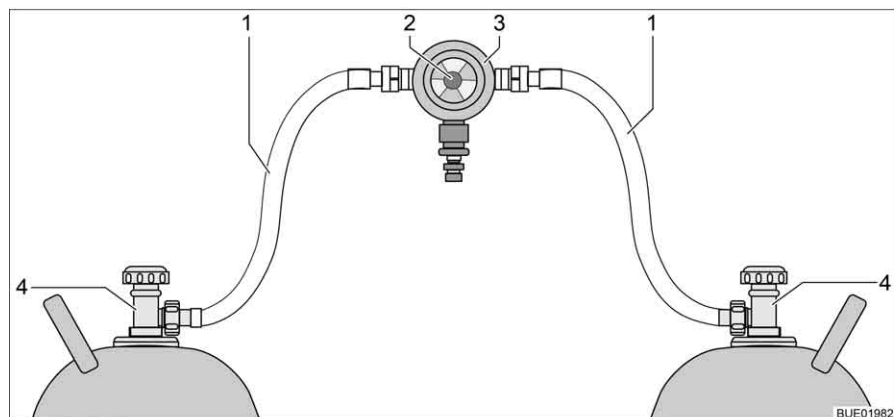


Fig. 158 Gas bottle switching facility

- 1 Gas tube
- 2 Knob for manual switching of the gas bottles
- 3 Gas pressure regulator with reversing valve and indicator
- 4 Regulator tap on the gas bottle

Facility with Crash Protection Unit (CPU)

The gas bottle switching facility consists of a combined gas pressure regulator with reversing valve and indicator (Fig. 159,4), and an electrovalve (Fig. 159,2). The electrovalve blocks the gas supply to the vehicle in the event of a full braking, an accident, or an unusually great inclined position. The gas bottle switching facility is installed between the two gas tubes (Fig. 159,1) with hose break guards (Fig. 159,5).

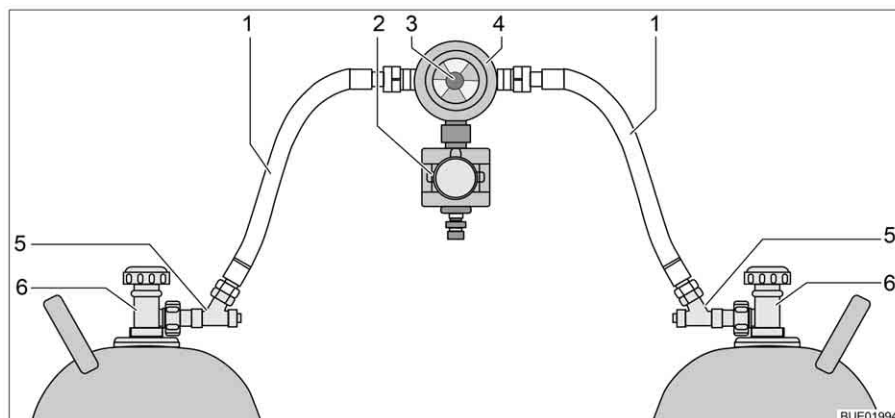


Fig. 159 Gas bottle switching facility with CPU

- 1 Gas tube
- 2 Electrovalve (CPU)
- 3 Knob for manual switching of the gas bottles
- 4 Gas pressure regulator with reversing valve and indicator
- 5 Hose break guard
- 6 Regulator tap on the gas bottle

Function

The gas bottle switching facility ensures a constant gas pressure, regardless of which gas bottle is being drawn upon. The display in the reversing valve shows the filling level of the primary bottle. The gas supply comes from the primary bottle when the display is green. When the display is red the primary bottle is empty. In this case, the reserve bottle is used for the gas supply.

Use the knob (Fig. 158,2 or Fig. 159,3) on the gas bottle switching facility to select which of the gas bottles is to be used as a primary bottle and which is to be used as a reserve bottle.

Operating unit

Depending on the equipment, the gas bottle switching facility is additionally equipped with an electrical operating unit (with or without remote display).



Fig. 160 Operating unit

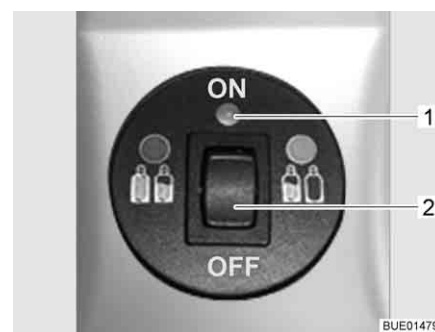


Fig. 161 Operating unit with remote display

Only the electrical functions can be switched at the operating unit (Fig. 160). The regulator taps on the gas bottles (Fig. 158,4 or Fig. 159,6) must be opened and closed manually.

Without remote display The indicator lamp on the operating unit shows the condition of the gas system. The system is okay when the indicator lamp (Fig. 160,1) lights up green. When the indicator lamp lights up or flashes red a fault has occurred. The gas supply is interrupted.

With remote display The indicator lamp on the operating unit (Fig. 160,1) shows the condition of the gas system:

Indicator lamp	Signification
Off	System switched off, gas supply switched off
Green	System switched on, gas supply switched on
Red	Gas supply switched off, triggered by sloping position or excessive acceleration, e.g. in the event of an accident
Yellow	System switched on, gas supply switched on, primary bottle empty
Flashes yellow	Self-check, for approx. 2 seconds, after switching on
Flashes red once	Valve not connected to control unit or internal error
Flashes red twice	Overvoltage determined, gas supply interrupted
Flashes red three times	Undervoltage determined, gas supply interrupted

Putting into operation:

- Open the regulator taps of the gas bottles (Fig. 158,4 or Fig. 159,6).
- Press the hose break guards (Fig. 159,5) successively for 10 seconds.
- Use the knob (Fig. 158,2 or Fig. 159,3) on the switching facility to select the gas bottle which is to be the primary source of gas (primary bottle). Always turn the knob as far as it will go.
- Switch on the switching facility on the operating unit. For this, set the rocker switch (Fig. 160,2 or Fig. 161,2) to "ON". The reversing valve is now deaerated. The indicator lamp (Fig. 160,1 or Fig. 161,1) flashes yellow (system test) and lights up green.

Switching off:

- Set the rocker switch (Fig. 160,2 or Fig. 161,2) to "OFF". The indicator lamp (Fig. 160,1 or Fig. 161,1) goes out.
- Close the regulator taps of the gas bottles (Fig. 158,4 or Fig. 159,6).



- ▶ When changing gas bottles, do not smoke or create any open fire.
- ▶ Depending on the connection, unscrew the gas tube from the gas bottle and screw it on the gas bottle again by hand or using a suitable special spanner. The screw connection on the gas bottle generally has a left-hand thread. **Do not** tighten too firmly.

Changing gas bottles:

- Change the position of the knob of the switching facility. The display is green again. Should the display stay red the reserve bottle is also empty and has to be changed as well.
- Close regulator tap on the empty gas bottle.
- Unscrew the gas tube of the gas bottle.
- Attach the protective cap to the gas bottle.
- Release the fixing belts and remove the gas bottle.
- Place a new gas bottle in the gas bottle compartment.

- Fix gas bottle in place with the fixing belts.
- Remove the protective cap from the gas bottle.
- Connect the full gas bottle to the gas tube.
- Open the regulator tap on the gas bottle.
- Press the hose break guard for 10 seconds.
- Turn the knob on the reversing valve to the changed bottle. Open the release button when the display is green.
- Set the knob on the reversing valve with a half-turn, so that the newly replaced gas bottle will serve as a reserve bottle.

7.6 Changing gas bottles



- ▶ When changing gas bottles, do not smoke or create any open fire.
- ▶ Depending on the connection, unscrew the gas tube from the gas bottle and screw it on the gas bottle again by hand or using a suitable special spanner. The screw connection on the gas bottle generally has a left-hand thread. **Do not** tighten too firmly.
- ▶ When you have changed the gas bottle, check whether gas escapes at the connection points and unions. Use a leakage search spray to spray the relevant connection point or union. These agents are available at the accessories shop.

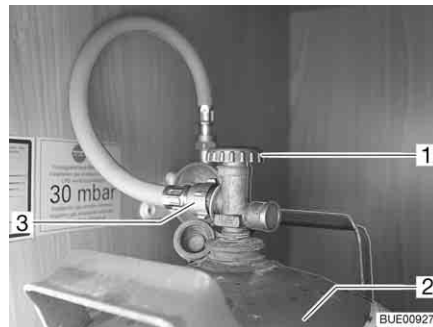


Fig. 162 Gas bottle compartment

- Open the external flap for the gas bottle compartment (see chapter 6).
- Close the regulator tap (Fig. 162,1) on the gas bottle (Fig. 162,2). Pay attention to the direction of the arrow.
- Unscrew the gas tube (Fig. 162,3) from the gas bottle.
- Attach the protective cap to the gas bottle.
- Release the fixing belts and remove the gas bottle.
- Place a filled gas bottle in the gas bottle compartment.
- Fix gas bottle in place with the fixing belts.
- Remove the protective cap from the gas bottle.
- Screw the gas tube onto the gas bottle.
- Close the external flap for the gas bottle compartment.



Chapter overview

This chapter contains instructions regarding the electrical system of the vehicle.

The operation of the electrical appliances of the housing body is described in chapter 9.

8.1 General safety instructions



- ▶ Only allow qualified personnel to work on the electrical system.
- ▶ All electronic devices (e.g. mobile telephones, radios, televisions or DVD players) which have been retrofitted to the vehicle and are operated during the journey must have certain features: These are the CE certification, the EMC inspection (electromagnetic compatibility) and the "e"-inspection.

Only in this way can the functional reliability of the vehicle be ensured. Otherwise the airbag may be triggered or interference to the on-board electronics may result.



- ▷ After the vehicle is started, delays to the output or forwarding of electrical impulses are possible.

The control unit of the basic vehicle does not release the D+ signal until the engine has reached full performance. In the event of a cold start in winter, this can take up to 15 seconds.

For this reason, output of warning signals (such as "entrance step extended") may sometimes be delayed.

The automatic retraction of a SAT antenna can also be delayed.

- ▷ During a storm, to protect the electrical devices disconnect the 230 V connection and retract the antennae.

8.2 Terms

Off-load voltage

The off-load voltage is the voltage of the battery in idle condition, i.e. no current is consumed and the battery is not being charged.



- ▷ The battery must remain idle for a while before measuring. After charging the last time, or after the last current has been drained by appliances, wait approximately 2 hours before measuring the off-load voltage.

Closed circuit current

Some electrical appliances, such as the clock and the indicator lamps, require continuous electric current, for this reason they are referred to as inactive appliances. This closed circuit current flows even if the device has been switched off.

Total discharge

Total discharge of the battery is imminent, if a battery is completely discharged by an active appliance and by closed circuit current and the off-load voltage falls below 12 V.



- ▷ Total discharge damages the battery.

Capacity Capacity refers to the amount of electricity which can be stored in a battery. The capacity of a battery is given in ampere hours (Ah). The so-called K20 value is normally used.

The K20 value indicates how much current a battery is able to dispense over a time period of 20 hours without causing damage, or how much current is required to charge a flat battery within 20 hours.

For example, if a battery can dispense 4 amps for 20 hours, then it has a capacity of $4 \text{ A} \times 20 \text{ h} = 80 \text{ Ah}$.

If more current flows, the discharging time of the battery will decrease proportionately.

External influences, such as temperature and age may alter the storage capacity of the battery. Capacity details refer to new batteries operating at room temperature.



- ▷ Depending on battery technology, capacity details have a conversion factor of 1.3 to 1.7, which lowers the real capacity by this value.

8.3 USB socket (partially special equipment)



- ▷ The charging current is maximum 1 amp.

The vehicle is equipped with one or more USB sockets.
All USB devices can be connected and charged via this USB socket.



Fig. 163 USB socket

8.4 12 V power supply



- ▷ Only connect devices with a maximum of 10 A to the sockets (Fig. 164,1) of the 12 V power supply.

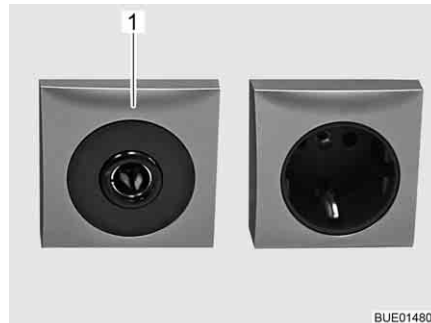


Fig. 164 12 V/10 A socket

8.4.1 Selector switch for radio (special equipment)



- ▷ Depending on the equipment level, a radio with integrated navigation device or a multimedia station will be present, referred to below simply as a "radio".
- ▷ The radio selector switch is installed in vehicles with Pioneer LCD display.



Fig. 165 Selector switch for operating behaviour

Switching the radio on and off with the ignition:

- Set the selector switch to the "0" position. The radio will be switched on and off with the ignition.

Operating the radio from the living area battery:

- Set the selector switch to the "1" position. The radio will be powered at all times from the living area battery.

8.4.2 Starter battery

The starter battery serves for starting the engine and supplies the electrical appliances of the base vehicle with voltage. See the instruction manual of the base vehicle for the position of the starter battery.



- ▷ The radio device in the driver's cabin is connected to the living area battery.

Discharging

This section contains information regarding the discharge of the starter battery.



- ▷ Total discharge damages the battery.
- ▷ Once a battery with acid is discharged, it can freeze in temperatures of below zero. This damages the battery.
- ▷ Recharge battery in good time.

The starter battery will be totally discharged via a closed circuit current (inactive appliances). Inactive appliances are optional devices such as a radio, alarm system, navigation system or a central locking system. Inactive appliances discharge the starter battery when the vehicle engine is switched off. Low temperatures outside reduce the capacity available.

Charging

This section contains information regarding the charging of the starter battery.



- ▶ The acid in the battery is poisonous and corrosive. Any contact with the skin or the eyes is to be avoided. In the event of contact, rinse immediately with plenty of water (skin, eyes, clothes, objects) and seek medical attention if necessary.
- ▶ In the case of charging with an external charger there is danger of explosion. Sparks can be caused by attaching the battery terminals. Only charge the battery in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames or possible sources of sparks. Batteries can develop and release gases when they are charged.



- ▷ Before a temporary lay-up, charge the battery fully.
- ▷ Do not connect the battery cables to the wrong poles (red cable -> positive pole, black cable -> negative pole).
- ▷ If the starter battery or living area battery are disconnected, do not apply the ignition. There is a danger of short circuit from exposed cable ends.
- ▷ Before disconnecting or connecting the terminals of the battery, switch off the vehicle engine as well as the 230 V and 12 V power supplies and all appliances. Danger of short circuit!
- ▷ Observe the instruction manuals for the base vehicle and the charger.

The starter battery can only be fully charged with an external charger. When the vehicle is connected to the 230 V power supply, the transformer/rectifier charges the starter battery with a float charge only. Even in mobile operation, the vehicle engine alternator has a limited capability of completely charging the starter battery.

When charging the starter battery with an external charger, proceed as follows:

- Turn off the vehicle engine.
- Switch off the 12 V power supply on the panel. The indicator lamps or the displays on the panel go out.
- Switch off all gas appliances, all gas isolator taps and close the regulator tap on the gas bottle.
- Disconnect the starter battery from the vehicle (e.g. remove the battery terminals). There is a danger of short circuit when disconnecting the battery poles. For this reason, first disconnect the negative terminal on the starter battery and then the positive.
- Check that the external charger is turned off.
- Connect the external charger to the starter battery. Pay attention to the polarity: First connect the positive terminal "+" to the positive terminal of the starter battery, then connect the negative terminal "-" to the negative pole of the starter battery.
- Switch on the external charger.
- See the instructions for use of the connected charger for information concerning charge period required for the battery.
- See the specifications on the battery for information concerning its strength.
- Disconnect the charger in reverse order (the negative terminal first).
- Connect the battery terminals again (first the positive terminal).

8.4.3 Living area battery



- ▷ Use only the built-in transformer/rectifier to load the living area battery. In order to do this, connect the 230 V connection (CEE connector) of the vehicle to an external 230 V power supply.
- ▷ After the trip, charge the living area battery fully.
- ▷ Before a temporary lay-up, charge the battery fully.
- ▷ When the living area battery is changed, only use batteries of the same type and the same capacity.
- ▷ If there are several living area batteries, always change all the batteries together. The batteries must **always** be the same age and have the same capacity.
- ▷ When changing the living area battery, use only batteries which meet the minimum capacity of the charger. Observe the separate instruction manual for the charger. Lower-capacity batteries will generate a great deal of heat when they are charged. Danger of explosion!
- ▷ If the living area battery is replaced and the charging unit does not provide at least 10 % of the rating of a new battery, install an auxiliary charging unit. Example: With a battery capacity of 80 Ah, the charging unit must supply at least 8 A charging current.
- ▷ Before disconnecting or connecting the terminals of the battery, switch off the vehicle engine as well as the 230 V and 12 V power supplies and all appliances. Danger of short circuit!



- ▷ If the starter battery or living area battery are disconnected, do not apply the ignition. There is a danger of short circuit from exposed cable ends.
- ▷ Take note of the battery manufacturer's users and maintenance instructions.



- ▷ If possible, begin the trip with a fully charged living area battery. Therefore, charge the living area battery before starting the trip.
- ▷ During the trip, use every available opportunity to charge the living area battery.
- ▷ The radio device in the driver's cabin is connected to the living area battery.
- ▷ The battery is maintenance-free. Maintenance-free means:
 - It is not necessary to check the acid level.
 - It is not necessary to lubricate the battery poles.
 - It is not necessary to refill the distilled water.
 - Even a maintenance-free battery must be recharged.
 - Recommendation: perform a full charging cycle every 6 to 8 weeks.
 - Depending on the battery capacity and the charger, the charging cycle will last 24 to 48 hours.

When the vehicle is not connected to the 230 V power supply or the 230 V power supply is switched off, the living area battery supplies the living area with 12 V DC. The living area battery has a limited power supply only. For this reason, electrical appliances such as the radio and the lights should not be operated for a long time without using the 230 V power supply.

Position See chapter 16.

Discharging The living area battery is discharged by the closed circuit current which some electrical appliances continuously require.



- ▷ Total discharge damages the battery.
- ▷ Recharge battery in good time.



- ▷ Appliances such as the refrigerator, charger, solar charge regulator, panel, or similar, take power from the battery, even when the 12 V main switch is turned off. Therefore disconnect the living area battery from the 12 V power supply, if the vehicle will not be used for a long period of time.

Even a fully charged living area battery can, after an extended period, be fully discharged via a closed-circuit current (inactive appliances).

Low temperatures outside reduce the capacity available.

The self-discharge rate of the battery is also dependant on temperature. At 20 to 25 °C the self-discharge rate is approx. 3 % of the capacity per month. The self-discharge rate will increase with rising temperatures.

An older battery no longer has the complete capacity available.

The higher the number of active electrical appliances, the faster the energy of the living area battery is consumed.

8.4.4 Charging batteries via a 230 V power supply

If the vehicle is connected to the 230 V power supply, the living area battery and the starter battery are automatically charged by the charger module on the transformer/rectifier. The starter battery is only charged with a float charge. The charging current is adapted to suit the charging condition of the battery. This ensures that it is not possible to overload the battery.

To make use of the maximum output from the charger module on the transformer/rectifier, switch off all electrical appliances during charging.

8.4.5 Charging batteries via the vehicle engine

When the vehicle engine is running, the vehicle alternator recharges the living area battery and the starter battery. When the vehicle engine is switched off, the batteries are automatically disconnected from one another by a relay in the transformer/rectifier. This prevents the starter battery from being run down by electrical appliances in the living area. The starting capability of the vehicle is thus preserved. The charging condition of the living area battery or the starter battery can be read on the panel.

8.5 Transformer/rectifier (EBL 119)



- ▷ Do not cover the ventilation slots. Danger of overheating!



- ▷ Depending on the model, not all slots for the fuses are occupied.
- ▷ Deviating from the default assignment, the following fuse values are inserted:
 - "Basic light / step": 20 A
 - "Spare 3": 10 A (fuse for USB socket)
- ▷ Further information can be obtained in the manufacturer's instruction manual.

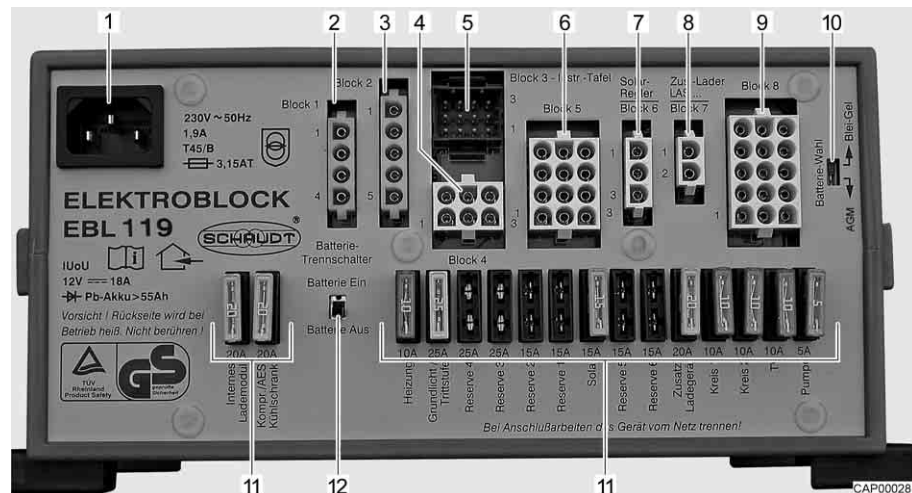


Fig. 166 Transformer/rectifier (EBL 119)

- 1 Main supply socket 230 V~
- 2 Output: Block 1 - refrigerator
- 3 Input: Block 2 - control lines
- 4 Output: Block 4 - heater, safety/drainage valve, basic light (lighting in the entrance area), entrance step
- 5 Output: Block 3 - panel
- 6 Output: Block 5 - solar cell (if fitted), spare 2, spare 3, spare 4
- 7 Output: Block 6 - solar charge regulator (if fitted)
- 8 Output: Block 7 - auxiliary charging unit
- 9 Output: Block 8 - consumer circuit 1, consumer circuit 2, 12 V socket, water pump, spare 1, spare 5, spare 6
- 10 Battery selector switch (lead-gel/AGM)
- 11 Fuses
- 12 Battery cut-off switch ("Batterie Ein/Aus" (battery On/Off))

Functions The transformer/rectifier has the following functions:

- The transformer/rectifier charges the living area battery. The transformer/rectifier charges the starter battery with a float charge only.
- The transformer/rectifier monitors the voltage in the living area battery.
- The transformer/rectifier distributes the current to the 12 V circuits and secures them. Devices with a maximum of 10 A can be connected to the sockets.
- The transformer/rectifier provides connections for a solar charge regulator, an auxiliary charging unit, as well as other control and monitoring functions.
- When the vehicle engine is turned off, the transformer/rectifier separates the starter battery electrically from the living area battery. This prevents the 12 V living area appliances from discharging the starter battery.
- The battery cut-off switch in the transformer/rectifier separates all the appliances from the living area battery.

The transformer/rectifier only works in conjunction with a panel.

When the transformer/rectifier is subject to a heavy load, the fitted charger module reduces the charging current. This protects the charger from overheating. The transformer/rectifier is subject to a heavy load when e.g. an empty living area battery is being charged, additional electrical appliances are turned on and the ambient temperatures are high.

Position See chapter 16.

8.5.1 Battery cut-off switch



- ▷ After switching the battery cut-off switch back on again: Put the basic light (lighting in the entrance area), entrance step, heater and spare 4 back into service (depending on the model). To do so, switch on the 12 V main switch briefly. This also applies if the living area battery was disconnected and then reconnected.

The battery cut-off switch disconnects all the living area 12 V appliances. This prevents the living area battery from slowly discharging if the vehicle is not used for a longer period of time (e.g. temporary lay-up).

The batteries can still be charged by the transformer/rectifier when the battery cut-off switch is turned off.

Switching on/off:

- Push the battery cut-off switch upwards: Battery On ("Batterie Ein").
- Push the battery cut-off switch downwards: Battery Off ("Batterie Aus").

8.5.2 Battery selector switch



- ▶ If the battery selector switch is set incorrectly, there is the danger of the formation of detonating (oxy-hydrogen gas). Danger of explosion!



- ▷ Incorrect setting of the battery selector switch damages the living area battery.
- ▷ The factory settings of the battery selector switch must not be changed.

8.5.3 Battery monitor



- ▷ You must fully recharge a discharged living area battery as soon as possible.

The battery monitor in the transformer/rectifier monitors the voltage in the living area battery.

If the battery voltage falls below 10.5 V, the battery monitor in the transformer/rectifier switches off all the 12 V appliances.

Measures:

- Switch off all electrical appliances that are not absolutely essential at the corresponding switch.
- If necessary, use the 12 V main switch to switch the 12 V power supply back on for a short while. This is only possible, however, when the battery voltage is above 11 V. If the voltage is below this level, the 12 V power supply cannot be switched on again until the living area battery has been recharged.

8.5.4 Charging the battery

When the vehicle engine is running, a relay in the transformer/rectifier alternator switches on the living area battery and the starter battery together and recharges them with the vehicle generator. When the vehicle engine is switched off, the batteries are automatically disconnected from one another again by the transformer/rectifier. This prevents the starter battery from being run down by electrical appliances in the living area. The starting capability of the vehicle is thus preserved. The terminal voltage of the living area battery or the starter battery can be read on the panel.

If the vehicle is connected to the 230 V power supply via the CEE socket outlet, the living area battery and the starter battery are charged by the charger module on the transformer/rectifier. The starter battery is only charged with a float charge. The charging current is adapted to suit the charging condition of the battery. This ensures that it is not possible to overload the battery.

To make use of the maximum output from the charger module on the transformer/rectifier, switch off all electrical appliances during charging.

8.6 Panel LT 96

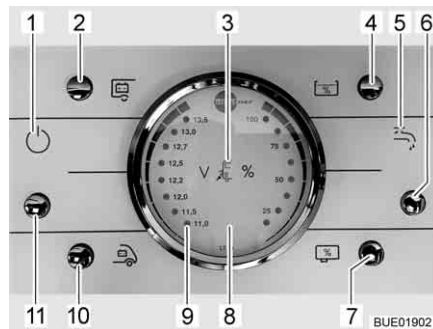


Fig. 167 Panel LT 96

- 1 12 V indicator lamp
- 2 Button for reading the battery voltage of the living area battery
- 3 230 V indicator lamp
- 4 Button for reading the filling level in the water tank
- 5 Indicator lamp water pump
- 6 Button for water pump (On/Off)
- 7 Button for reading the filling level in the waste water tank
- 8 V/tank gauge
- 9 "ALARM" warning light for the living area battery
- 10 Button for reading the battery voltage of the starter battery
- 11 Button for 12 V power supply (On/Off)

8.6.1 Button for 12 V power supply

The button (Fig. 167,11) switches the panel and the 12 V power supply to the living area on and off.

Exception: Depending on the model, heater, basic light (lighting in the entrance area), entrance step, Reserve 4 and a refrigerator with automatic power selection system (AES) remain ready to operate.

Switching on: ■ Press the button (Fig. 167,11): The 12 V living area power supply is switched on. The indicator lamp (Fig. 167,1) lights up.

Switching off: ■ Press the button (Fig. 167,11): The 12 V living area power supply is switched off. The indicator lamp (Fig. 167,1) goes out.



- ▷ When leaving the vehicle, switch off the main 12 V power supply at the panel. This prevents any unnecessary discharge of the living area battery.
- ▷ Appliances, such as control units (e.g. solar charge regulator, defroster or panel) or fitted appliances (e.g. heating, refrigerator or step) continue to take power from the battery capacity, even if the 12 V power supply on the panel is switched off. Therefore disconnect the living area battery from the 12 V power supply via the switch on the transformer/rectifier if the vehicle will not be used for a long period of time.

8.6.2 V/tank gauge for battery voltage and water or waste water levels

Battery voltage

The V/tank gauge is for the indication of the battery voltage of the starter battery or the living area battery.

With the V/tank gauge (Fig. 167,8), note the left scale. The gauge automatically lights up as soon as a button is pressed.

Displays:

- Press the button (Fig. 167,10): The battery voltage of the starter battery is displayed.
- Press the button (Fig. 167,2): The battery voltage of the living area battery is displayed.

The following tables will help you correctly interpret the battery voltage of the living area battery displayed on the panel LT 96.

Danger of total discharge (battery alarm)

Battery voltage (values during operation)	Mobile operation (vehicle moving, no 230 V connection)	Battery operation (vehicle stationary, no 230 V connection)	Power operation (vehicle stationary, 230 V connection)
11 V or less	12 V power supply overload	If appliances are switched off: Battery flat	12 V power supply overload
	The battery is not charged by the alternator, the alternator's regulator is defective	If appliances are switched on: Battery overload	The battery is not charged by the transformer/rectifier, the transformer/rectifier is defective
11.5 V up to 13.0 V	12 V power supply overload ¹⁾	Normal range	12 V power supply overload ¹⁾
	The battery is not charged by the alternator, the alternator's regulator is defective ¹⁾		The battery is not charged by the transformer/rectifier, the transformer/rectifier is defective
Over 13.5 V	Battery being charged	Occurs only briefly after charging	Battery being charged

¹⁾ If the voltage does not exceed this range for several hours.

Values for off-load voltage	Charging condition of the battery
Less than 12 V	Discharged or totally discharged
12.2 V	25 %
12.5 V	50 %
More than 12.7 V	100 %



▷ Total discharge causes irreparable damage to the battery.



- ▷ Measure the off-load voltage preferably several hours after the previous charging (e.g. in the morning) and not directly after a current drain.

Volume of water/waste water

The V/tank gauge is for the indication of the quantity of water or waste water. With the V/tank gauge (Fig. 167,8), note the right scale. The gauge automatically lights up as soon as a button is pressed.

Displays:

- Press the button (Fig. 167,4): The volume of water is displayed.
- Press the button (Fig. 167,7): The volume of waste water is displayed.



- ▷ Only read the tank levels briefly. Keeping the reading option on for a long time can damage the transducers.

8.6.3 Button for water pump

Switching on:

- Press the button (Fig. 167,6): The water supply is ON. The water pump indicator lamp (Fig. 167,5) lights up.

Switching off:

- Press the button (Fig. 167,6): The water supply is OFF. The water pump indicator lamp (Fig. 167,5) goes out.

Level indicator

No LED	2 LEDs	4 LEDs	6 LEDs	8 LEDs
0 %	25 %	50 %	75 %	100 %



- ▷ If the vehicle is not connected to the 230 V power supply and the water pump is not used for a longer period of time: Switch off the power supply for the water pump. The pump relay uses around 4 Ah current each day.

8.6.4 Battery alarm for the living area battery

The red "ALARM" warning light (Fig. 167,9) flashes as soon as the voltage of the living area battery falls below 11 V (measured under operation) and there is a risk of a total discharge.



- ▷ Total discharge damages the battery.

Measures:

- When the battery alarm comes on, switch off the appliances and charge the living area battery, either by mobile operation or by connection to a 230 V power supply.

8.6.5 12 V indicator lamp

The 12 V indicator lamp (Fig. 167,1) lights up when the 12 V main button (Fig. 167,11) is switched on.

8.6.6 230 V indicator lamp

The 230 V indicator lamp (Fig. 167,3) illuminates whenever line voltage is available at the transformer/rectifier input.



- ▷ Further information can be obtained in the manufacturer's instruction manual.

8.7 Solar installation (special equipment)



- ▷ Protect the solar collectors (solar module) against mechanical overload.



- ▷ The solar installation supplies the most current under optimal sunlight conditions.
- ▷ Provide the solar collectors (solar module) open access to sunlight.
- ▷ Sunlight is greater in the open air than under trees and bridges.
- ▷ Tarpaulins block out sunlight.
- ▷ Always keep collector surfaces free of contamination.
- ▷ Also read the manufacturer's instruction manual.

The solar installation provides an environmentally compatible power supply independent of the mains. It converts energy from sunlight into electric current. The solar installation supplies additional current for the battery and appliances.

The solar charge regulator has an integrated overload protection as well as deep discharge protection.

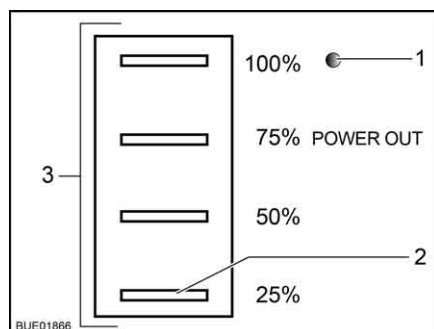


Fig. 168 Status indicator, solar charge regulator

Four LEDs (Fig. 168,3) show the current operating state. Another LED (Fig. 168,1) shows whether output voltage is present.

LED	Status	Signification
Operating state LEDs (Fig. 168,3)	Flashing cyclically	Battery being charged
	Lit up	Battery is fully charged
LED 25 % (Fig. 168,2)	Flashing	Battery is fully discharged
Output voltage LED (Fig. 168,1)	Lit up	Output voltage present
	Not lit up	Output voltage not present

8.8 230 V power supply



- ▶ Only allow qualified personnel to work on the electrical system.
- ▶ Have the vehicle's electrical system checked by a qualified electrician at least once every 3 years. If the vehicle is used frequently, an annual check is recommended.

The 230 V power supply provides electricity for:

- sockets with earth contact for appliances with maximum 16 A
- refrigerator
- transformer/rectifier
- an auxiliary charging unit
- air conditioning unit

The electrical appliances connected to the 12 V power supply of the living area are supplied with voltage by the living area battery.

Connect the vehicle to an external 230 V power supply system as often as possible. The charger module in the transformer/rectifier automatically charges the living area battery. In addition to this, the starter battery is charged with a float charge of approx. 2 A.

Depending on the equipment, the air conditioning unit and other optional devices are fuse-protected by their own safety cut-out (16 A).

8.8.1 230 V connection (CEE socket outlet)



- ▷ Overvoltage can damage connected devices. Overvoltage can be caused by lightning, irregular voltage sources (e.g. petrol-operated generators) or power connections on ferries for example.

Requirements concerning the 230 V connection

- The connecting cable, the plug connectors at the point of supply and the plug connector to the vehicle must comply with IEC 60309. The standard designation for the plug connectors is "CEE blue".
- Use H07RN-F rubber sheathed cable with a minimum cable cross-section of 2.5 mm² and a maximum length of 25 m.
- Earth contact connectors (safety) are not permitted. The interconnection of CEE/safety adapters is also prohibited.

8.8.2 Connecting the 230 V power supply



- ▶ The external 230 V power supply must be protected by fuse with a fault current protection switch (FI-switch, 30 mA).
- ▶ To prevent overheating, the cable must be fully uncoiled from the cable reel.
- ▶ In case of doubt or if the 230 V supply is not available or is faulty, contact the operator of the power supply device.



- ▷ The 230 V connection in the vehicle is equipped with a combined fault current protection switch with safety cut-out.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment, an additional safety cut-out is installed in the fuse box.
- ▷ For the connection points on camp sites (camping distributors) fault current protection switches (FI-switches, 30 mA) are obligatory.

The vehicle can be connected to an external 230 V power supply.



- 1 Test button
- 2 Safety cut-out
- 3 Fuse box
- 4 Combined fault current protection switch / safety cut-out

Fig. 169 230 V fuse box

Connecting the vehicle:

- Check whether the power supply device is suitable regarding connection, voltage, frequency and current.
- Check whether the cables and connections are suitable.
- Check the plug connectors and cables for visible damage.
- Switch off the safety cut-out (Fig. 169,2 and 4) in the fuse box (Fig. 169,3).

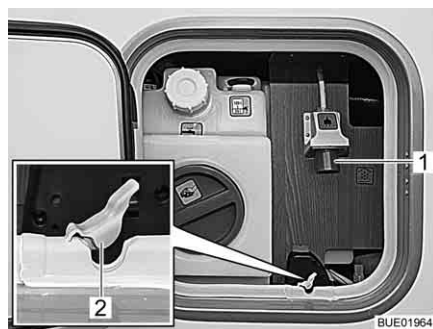


Fig. 170 230 V connection on vehicle

- Open the seal (Fig. 170,2) of the cable feedthrough.
- Guide the cable through the cable feedthrough into the vehicle.
- Plug the plug connector into the 230 V connection (Fig. 170,1) of the vehicle.
- Close the service flap.
- Plug the connector of the connecting cable into the socket of the power supply device. Ensure that the detent of the spring-mounted pivoting cover is engaged in position.
- Switch on the safety cut-out in the fuse box.

Checking the fault current protection switch:

- When the vehicle is connected to the 230 V supply, press the test button (Fig. 169,1) of the combined fault current protection switch / safety cut-out (Fig. 169,4) in the fuse box (Fig. 169,3). The fault current protection switch must trip.
- Switch the fault current protection switch back on again.

Unplugging the connection:

- Switch off the safety cut-outs (Fig. 169,2 and 4) in the fuse box (Fig. 169,3).
- Loosen the detent on the power supply device and unplug the connection cable from the socket.
- Open the service flap.

- Unplug the plug connector from the connection (Fig. 170,1) of the vehicle and remove the connecting cable.
- Press the seal (Fig. 170,2) of the cable feedthrough into the recess of the service flap gasket.
- Close the service flap.

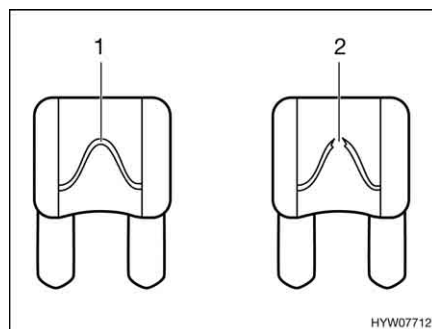
8.9 Fuses



- ▶ Only replace defective fuses when the cause of the defect is known and has been remedied.
- ▶ Replace defective fuses only after the power supply has been turned off.
- ▶ Never bridge or repair fuses.
- ▶ Only replace faulty fuses with a new fuse with the same rating.

8.9.1 12 V fuses

The appliances connected to the 12 V power supply in the living area are fused individually. The fuses can be accessed in the driver's cabin, on the batteries, on or next to the transformer/rectifier and on the appliances.



- 1 Unbroken fuse element
- 2 Broken fuse element

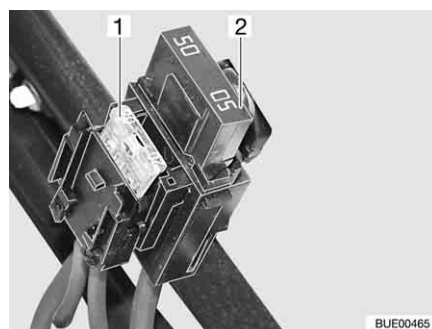
Fig. 171 12 V fuse

An intact 12 V fuse can be detected by the unbroken fuse element (Fig. 171,1). If the fuse element is broken (Fig. 171,2), change the fuse.

Before changing fuses, take the function, value and colour of the relevant fuses from the following specifications. When changing fuses, only use flat fuses with the values shown below.

Fuses on the starter battery

The fuses are installed in the vicinity of the starter battery. The starter battery is on the floor between the seats in the driver's cabin and can be accessed under a cover.

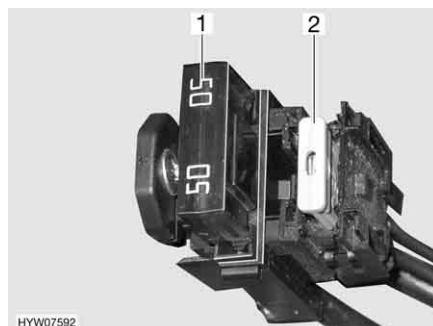


- 1 Flat fuse 20 A/yellow (for the refrigerator)
- 2 Jumbo flat fuse 50 A/red

Fig. 172 Fuses on the starter battery

Fuses on the living area battery

The fuses are fitted next to the living area battery.



- 1 Jumbo flat fuse 50 A/red (for the transformer/rectifier)
- 2 Flat fuse 2 A/grey (for battery sensor, living area battery)

Fig. 173 Fuses on the living area battery

Fuses on the relay box AD01

A relay box (AD01) is installed in one of the two seat consoles. The relay box helps generate the signals for the chassis lighting not provided by the base vehicle. The relay box can be used anywhere.

The circuit used by us can vary from the circuit provided by the manufacturer. Consequently, the circuit can also vary from the display on the relay box type plate, which the manufacturer affixed.

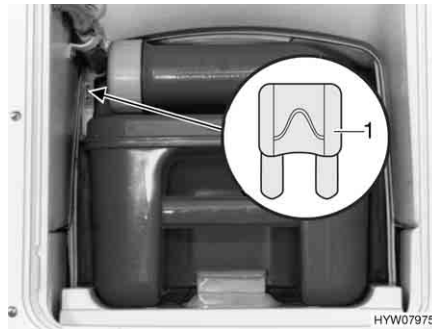
FuNo	Function	Value/colour
B2	Cl. 15 (ignition on)	15 A blue
B3	Cl. 30 (constant positive)	15 A blue
B5	Signal D+	Internal Polyswitch (2 A)
B6	Spare	15 A blue
B7	Front side marker lights (white/red)	5 A light brown

Fuses on the transformer/rectifier (EBL 119)

Function	Value/colour
Internal charger module	20 A yellow
Compressor/AES refrigerator	20 A yellow
Heater	10 A red
Basic light/electrically operated entrance step/radio	25 A white
Spare 4	25 A white
Spare 3	25 A white
Spare 2	15 A blue
Spare 1	15 A blue
Solar	15 A blue
Spare 5	15 A blue
Spare 6	15 A blue
Auxiliary charging unit	20 A yellow
Circuit 1	10 A red
Circuit 2	10 A red
TV	10 A red
Water pump	5 A light brown

Fuse for the Thetford toilet (swivel toilet)

The fuse is located in the locker wall of the Thetford cassette.



1 Flat fuse 3 A/purple

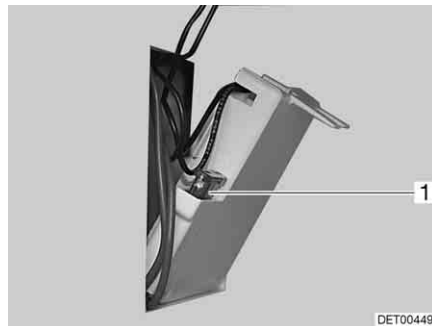
Fig. 174 Fuse for the Thetford toilet

Changing:

- Open the flap for the Thetford cassette on the outside of the vehicle.
- Pull out the Thetford cassette completely.
- Replace fuse (Fig. 174,1).

Fuse for the Thetford toilet (fixed seat)

The fuse is located in the locker wall of the Thetford cassette.



1 Flat fuse 3 A/purple

Fig. 175 Fuse for the Thetford toilet

Changing:

- Open the flap for the Thetford cassette on the outside of the vehicle.
- Remove the Thetford cassette and swing out the flap in the housing panel.
- Replace fuse (Fig. 175,1).

Protection for waste water heating

The control unit has an electronic overload protection. In the event of an overload, the waste water heating switches off. To restart, disconnect the control unit briefly from the power supply.

Depending on the model, the supply voltage of the waste water heating will be protected by the fuse circuit Spare 3 or Spare 4.

Overview of electrical pull-down bed fuses

Model	Pull-down bed fuse
Ixeo TL	Fuse Spare 3 (25 A) on the transformer/rectifier
Ixeo Time	Fuse Spare 3 (25 A) on the transformer/rectifier and 20 A/2 A fuses in proximity of the pull-down bed motor
Lyseo TD front bed	Fuse Spare 3 (25 A) on the transformer/rectifier and 2 A fuse in proximity of the pull-down bed motor
Lyseo TD 744 rear bed	Basic light / step fuse (25 A) on the transformer/rectifier and 2 A fuse in proximity of the pull-down bed motor
Lyseo TD 745 rear bed	Fuse Spare 2 (15 A)

Fuses for the pull-down bed (Ixeo Time)

The fuses for the pull-down bed are located on the motor control at the belt drive.

In addition, the pull-down bed also has a fuse on the transformer/rectifier at the Reserve 3 (25 A) connection for protection.



- 1 Flat fuse 2 A/grey
- 2 Flat fuse 20 A/yellow

Fig. 176 Fuses for the pull-down bed

The belt drive (and therefore also the fuses) is installed in a wall-mounted cupboard. Depending on the model, access to the belt drive is also possible from the inside, or through a window from the outside.

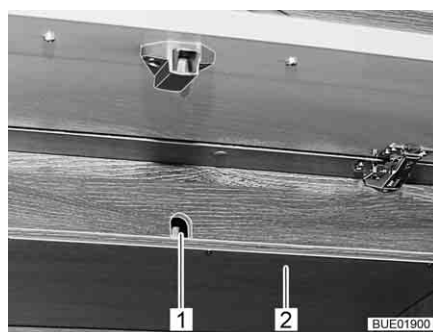


Fig. 177 Flap on the wall-mounted cupboard

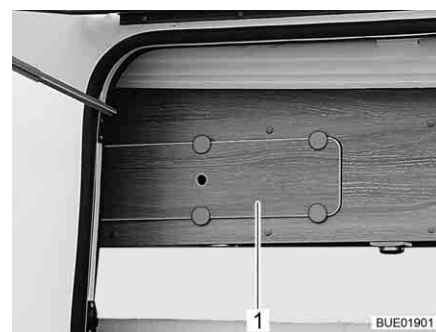


Fig. 178 Cover on the wall-mounted cupboard

Changing fuses (Ixeo Time IT 710 - IT 734):

- Open the flap on the left wall-mounted cupboard under the pull-down bed.
- Remove the cover (Fig. 177,2) underneath the access opening (Fig. 177,1) for the crank.
- Replace fuse.
- Fasten the cover and close the flap.

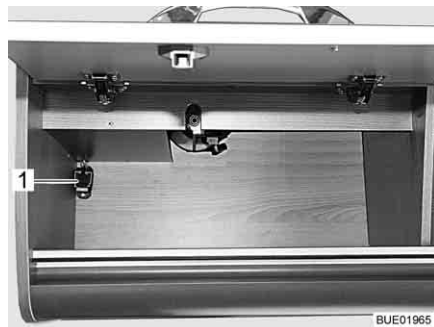
*Changing fuses
(Ixeo Time IT 590):*

- Lower the pull-down bed with the crank to window height (for emergency operation, see 6.14.6).
- Open the window next to the seating group.
- Remove the cover (Fig. 178,1).
- Replace fuse.
- Close the cover.
- Lift the pull-down bed to the parked position.

Fuse for the pull-down bed (Lyseo TD)

The fuse for the front pull-down bed is installed in the front wall-mounted cupboard on the left-hand side of the vehicle.

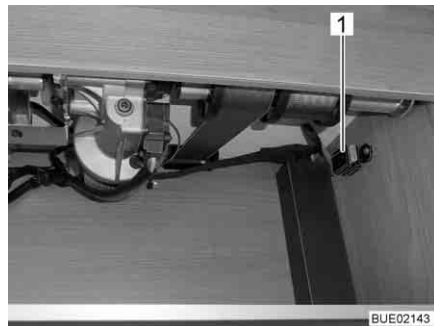
In addition, the pull-down bed also has a fuse on the transformer/rectifier at the Reserve 3 connection for protection.



1 Fuse 2 A/yellow

Fig. 179 Front pull-down bed fuse

If there is a pull-down bed present in the rear, the fuse is installed in the rear wall-mounted cupboard on the left-hand side of the vehicle.



1 Fuse 2 A/grey

Fig. 180 Rear pull-down bed fuse

8.9.2 230 V fuse



- ▷ Check the fault current protection switch for each connection to the 230 V power supply, at least once every 6 months.



- ▷ In international language usage, the fault current protection switch is also denominated RCD (Residual Current Device).



Fig. 181 230 V fuse box

A combined fault current protection switch / safety cut-out (Fig. 181,4) in the fuse box (Fig. 181,3) protects the complete vehicle from fault current (0.03 A).

The integrated safety cut-out (16 A) protects the 230 V sockets, the power supply unit, the auxiliary charging unit, and the refrigerator.

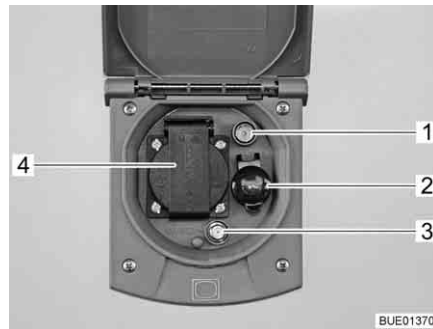
For vehicles with special equipment, (e.g. air conditioning unit), the appliance is protected by an additional safety cut-out (10 A) (Fig. 181,2).

Position See chapter 16.

Checking the fault current protection switch:

- When the vehicle is connected to the 230 V power supply, press the test button (Fig. 181,1). The fault current protection switch must trip.

8.10 External socket (special equipment)



- 1 TV socket
- 2 12 V socket
- 3 SAT socket
- 4 230 V socket

Fig. 182 External socket

The 230 V socket and the 12 V socket can be used to power electrical devices in the awning.

Connection possibilities

TV socket and SAT socket offer various possibilities for TV operation:

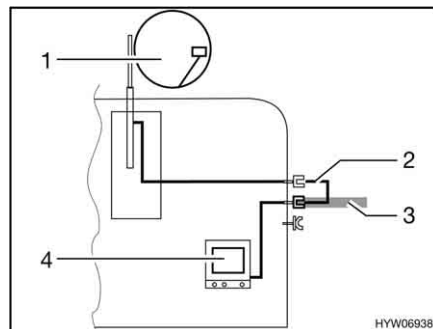


Fig. 183 TV inside the vehicle

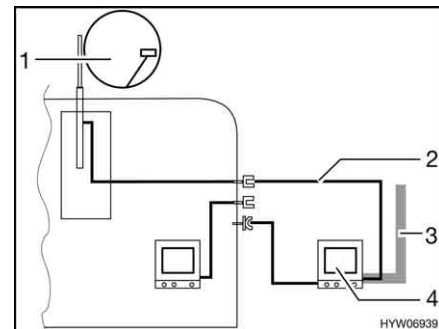


Fig. 184 TV in the awning

- TV inside the vehicle (Fig. 183,4): Connection to roof antenna (Fig. 183,1) with connection cable (Fig. 183,2)
- TV inside the vehicle (Fig. 183,4): Connection to external antenna (Fig. 183,3)
- TV inside the awning (Fig. 184,4): Connection to roof antenna (Fig. 184,1) with connection cable (Fig. 184,2)
- TV inside the awning (Fig. 184,4): Connection to external antenna (Fig. 184,3)

8.11 Circuit diagrams
8.11.1 Circuit diagrams, interior

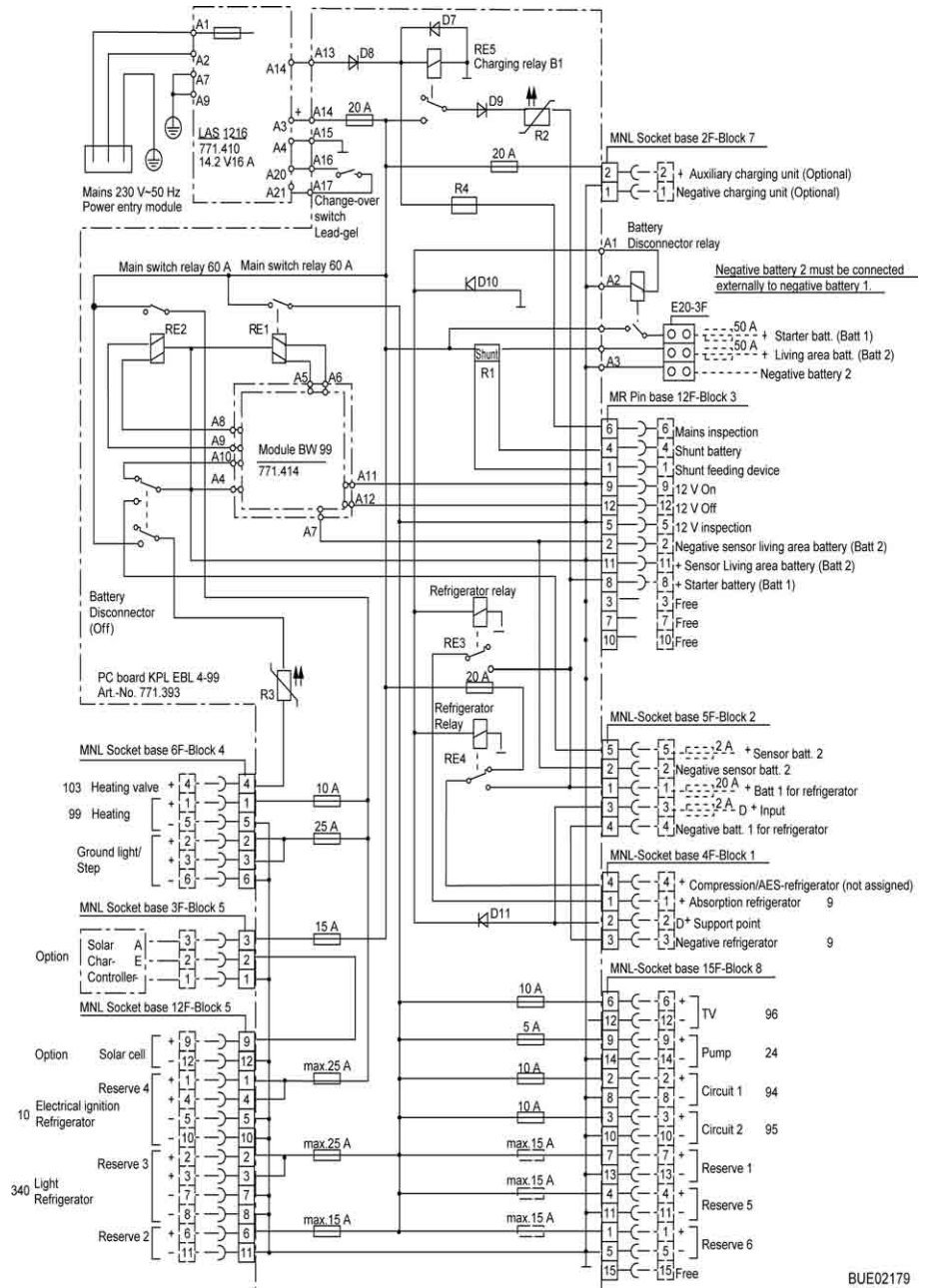
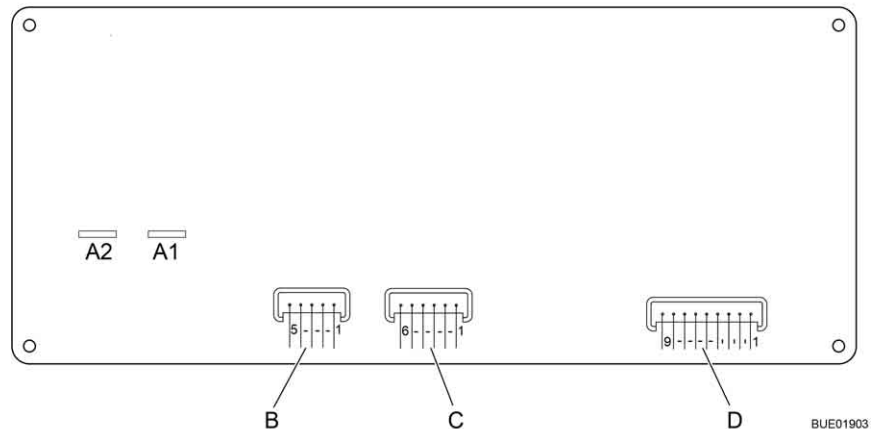


Fig. 185 Circuit diagram, interior (EBL 119)

BUE02179

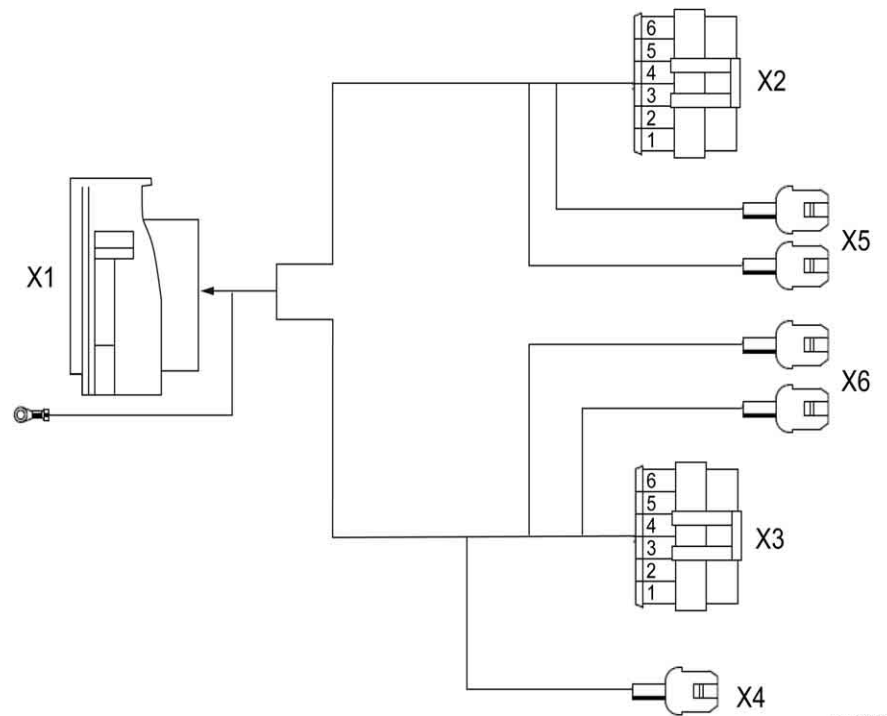


BUE01903

Fig. 186 Connection diagram, panel (LT 96)

A	2 x AMP flat pins 4.8 x 0.8
1	Pump
2	+ 12 V
B	Lumberg MSFQ 5-pin
1	Full
2	3/4
3	1/2
4	1/4
5	Base waste water tank
C	Lumberg MSFQ 6-pin
1	Full
2	3/4
3	1/2
4	1/4
5	Base water tank
6	n. c.
D	Lumberg MSFQ 9-pin
1	12 V indicator
2	12 V main button off
3	12 V main button on
4	Plus Starter battery 12 V
5	Plus Living area battery sensor
6	Negative Living area battery sensor
7	230 V indicator
8	n. c.
9	n. c.

8.11.2 Circuit diagram, exterior



BUE02108

Fig. 187 Circuit diagram, exterior

**X1 Central connector
(MCP 12-pole)**

Pin	Colour of conductor	Signal
1	wh	GND
2	gy	Tail light, left
3	bn	Tail light, right
4	ye	Direction indicator lamp, left
5	gn	Direction indicator lamp, right
6	rd	Brake light, left
7	or	Brake light, right
8	rd	Third brake light
9	bu	Fog tail light, left
10	vt	Right fog tail lights
11	pi	Licence plate light
12	vt	Reverse light, left
13	vt	Reverse light, right

	Pin	Colour of conductors of wiring harness	Colour of conductors of tail light	Signal
Connector for Tail light, left (Superseal 6-pole)	1	wh	wh	GND
	2	vt	gy	Reverse light
	3	bu	bu	Fog tail light
	4	ye	ye	Direction indicator light
	5	rd	rd	Brake light
	6	gy	bk	Tail light
Connector for Tail light, right (Superseal 6-pole)	1	wh	wh	GND
	2	vt	gy	Reverse light
	3	vt	bu	Fog tail light
	4	gn	ye	Direction indicator light
	5	or	rd	Brake light
	6	bn	bk	Tail light
X4 Connector for third brake light (MNL 2-pole)	1	rd	-	Third brake light
	2	wh	-	GND
X5/X6 Licence plate light (spade connector)	1	pi	-	Licence plate light
	2	wh	-	GND

Chapter overview

This chapter contains instructions regarding the appliances of the vehicle. The instructions refer exclusively to the operation of the appliances. Further information about the appliances can be found in the instruction manuals for the appliances, included separately with the vehicle.

9.1 General



- ▷ For safety reasons, spare parts for pieces of heating appliances must correspond with manufacturer's instructions and be permitted by the manufacturer as a spare part. These spare parts may only be fitted by the manufacturer or an authorised specialist workshop.

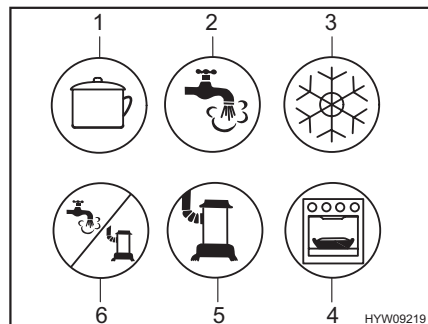


- ▷ Further information can be obtained in the instruction manual for the respective appliance.

The heater, air conditioning unit, boiler, cooker and refrigerator are fitted depending on the model of the vehicle.

In this instruction manual a description is given only for the operation of the appliances and their particular features.

To operate gas appliances, first open the regulator tap on the gas bottle and the gas isolator tap corresponding to the appliance.



- 1 Cooker
- 2 Hot water
- 3 Refrigerator
- 4 Oven/grill
- 5 Heater
- 6 Hot water/heater

Fig. 188 Symbols for the gas isolator taps

9.2 Heater and boiler

The heater can both heat up the vehicle interior (heating the room air) and heat up the domestic water (boiler function). The following instructions are also valid if the heater is only used as boiler.



- ▶ Never let gas escape unburned due to danger of explosion.
- ▶ Never run the heater in gas operation when refuelling, on ferries or in the garage. Danger of explosion!
- ▶ Never operate the heater in gas operation in closed spaces (e.g. garages). Danger of poisoning and suffocation!
- ▶ The waste gas vent may neither be closed nor blocked.
- ▶ Do not use the space behind the heater as a storage compartment.
- ▶ The water in the boiler can be heated up to 65 °C. Risk of scalding!



- ▷ Never use boiler when empty.
- ▷ If the boiler is not being used, empty it if there is any risk of frost.
- ▷ Only operate the boiler with the maximum temperature setting if you require a large quantity of warm water. This protects the boiler against the build-up of limescale.
- ▷ The circulation fan is automatically switched on when the hot-air heater is activated, and it stays on. This drains the living area battery when the vehicle is not connected to an external 230 V power supply. Take into consideration that the living area battery only has limited reserves of energy.



- ▷ Do not use the water from the boiler as drinking water.
- ▷ The hot-air heater can even run on an empty boiler.
- ▷ If the power supply to the heater was interrupted, the time must be reset.

Initial start-up

When lighting the heater for the first time a small amount of smoke and odour will occur. Immediately set the operating switch of the heater to its highest position. Open doors and windows and ventilate well. Smoke and odour will disappear by themselves after a while.

9.2.1 Models with waste gas vent on the right-hand side of the vehicle



- ▶ If the awning is put up and the heater is running in gas operation, exhaust gases from the heater can escape into the awning area. Danger of suffocation! Make sure the area is sufficiently ventilated.

9.2.2 To heat properly



Fig. 189 Air outlet nozzle (hot-air heater)

Hot air distribution

Several air outlet nozzles (Fig. 189) are built into the vehicle. Pipes conduct the warm air to the air outlet nozzles. Turn the air outlet nozzles in a suitable position so the air can escape as required. To avoid draft close the air outlet nozzles on the dashboard and set the air distribution of the base vehicle to air circulation.

Adjusting the air outlet nozzles

- Fully open: Full hot air stream
- Half or partially open: Reduced hot air stream

When five air outlet nozzles are completely opened, less warm air escapes through each nozzle. However, if only three air outlet nozzles are opened, more warm air flows out of each nozzle.

9.2.3 Hot-air heater and boiler with CP plus digital operating unit



- ▷ If there is a risk of frost and the heater is not in operation, empty the boiler.
- ▷ The circulation fan is automatically switched on when the hot-air heater is activated, and it stays on. This drains the living area battery when the vehicle is not connected to an external 230 V power supply. Take into consideration that the living area battery only has limited reserves of energy.



- ▷ Depending on the equipment, the heater can be operated from a mobile terminal (e.g. smartphone, tablet PC) via an app (see section 9.4). The Truma app can be loaded for common mobile terminals via the respective app stores.
- ▷ The hot-air heater can even run on an empty boiler.
- ▷ If the power supply to the heater was interrupted, the time must be reset.

Operating unit

The operating unit is divided into two sections:

- Display
- Operating buttons



- 1 Display
- 2 Rotary push button
- 3 Back button

Fig. 190 Operating unit (hot-air heater and boiler)

After being switched on, the most recently set values/operating parameters are activated.

If no button is pressed, the operating unit switches to stand-by mode after a few minutes.

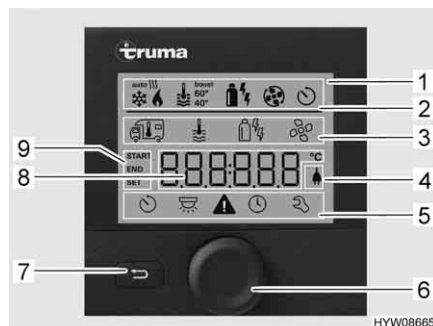
If the time is set, the display in stand-by mode alternates between the time and the room temperature set.

After being switched off, the display in the control unit may remain active for several minutes since the heater is still running.

Operating buttons

The operating buttons have the following functions:

Button	Button operation	Function
Rotary push button (Fig. 190,2)	Turn to the right	Menu is run through from left to right Values are increased
	Turn to the left	Menu is run through from right to left Values are decreased
	Press briefly	Selected value is saved Menu item is selected for changing values (selected menu item flashes)
	Press (3 seconds)	Switch on or switch off
Back button (Fig. 190,3)	Press	Return from a menu item without saving values



- 1 Display
- 2 Status line
- 3 Upper menu line
- 4 Display line voltage 230 V
- 5 Lower menu line
- 6 Rotary push button
- 7 Back button
- 8 Settings and values display area
- 9 Timer display

Fig. 191 Operating unit with displays

Display

The display is divided into four sections:

- Status line (Fig. 191,2)
- Upper menu line (Fig. 191,3)

- Display area (Fig. 191,8)
- Lower menu line (Fig. 191,5)

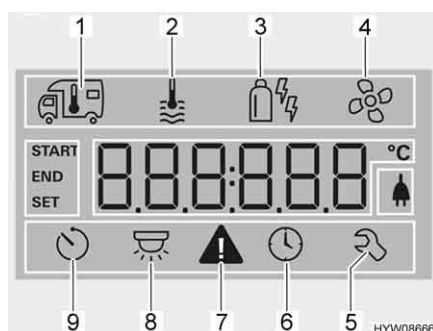
Switching operating unit on/off:



- Press and hold the rotary push button (Fig. 191,6) for approx. 3 seconds. Both menu lines (Fig. 191,3 and Fig. 191,5) are displayed. The first symbol flashes.
- ▷ Switching the operating mode on/off means switching between stand-by and setting mode. In stand-by mode, the display alternates between the room temperature and the time that have been set.

Carrying out settings:

- Turn rotary push button (Fig. 191,6) until the required menu symbol flashes.
- Press rotary push button.
- Turn rotary push button until the required value is displayed.
- Press rotary push button to save the value set. If you do not wish to change the value originally set: Press back button (Fig. 191,7).



- 1 Heater
- 2 Hot water
- 3 Operating mode
- 4 Fan
- 5 Service menu
- 6 Setting the time
- 7 Warning symbol
- 8 Lighting (not used here)
- 9 Timer

Fig. 192 Display (operating unit)

Switching on the heater:

- Open the regulator tap on the gas bottle and the gas isolator tap "Heater/boiler".
- Turn rotary push button (Fig. 191,6) until the heater menu symbol (Fig. 192,1) flashes.
- Press rotary push button.
- Turn rotary push button until required value is displayed.
- Press rotary push button to save the value set. The symbol in the status line (Fig. 191,2) flashes until the room temperature set is reached. If you do not wish to change the value originally set: Press back button (Fig. 191,7).

Switching off the heater:



- Turn temperature value back until OFF is displayed. Press rotary push button to save.
- ▷ The required room temperature can also be changed in stand-by mode by turning the rotary push button.

Switching on hot water production:

- Open the regulator tap on the gas bottle and the gas isolator tap "Heater/boiler".
- Turn rotary push button (Fig. 191,6) until the hot water menu symbol (Fig. 192,2) flashes.
- Press rotary push button.

- Turn rotary push button until the required value is displayed:
 - OFF: Hot water production is switched off.
 - 40°: Hot water is heated to 40 °C.
 - 60°: Hot water is heated to 60 °C.
 - BOOST: Fast heating of hot water (boiler priority) for max. 40 minutes. The water temperature is then held at a higher level for two reheating cycles (approximately 62 °C).
- Press rotary push button to save the value set. The symbol in the status line (Fig. 191,2) flashes until the hot water temperature set is reached. If you do not wish to change the value originally set: Press back button (Fig. 191,7).

Switching off hot water production:

- Turn rotary push button until OFF is displayed. Press rotary push button to save.

Safety/drainage valve

The boiler is equipped with a safety/drainage valve (Fig. 193). The safety/drainage valve prevents water in the boiler from freezing, when there is frost and the heater is not switched on.



- ▷ When the vehicle is not used for a long period of time, open the safety/drainage valve and empty the boiler.
- ▷ At temperatures below 2 °C the safety/drainage valve opens automatically. Only if the temperature of the safety/drainage valve lies above 6 °C can it be shut again.
- ▷ The water pump and the water fittings are not protected against freezing by the safety/drainage valve.



- ▷ The drainage neck of the safety/drainage valve has to be free of dirt (e.g. leaves, ice) at all times.

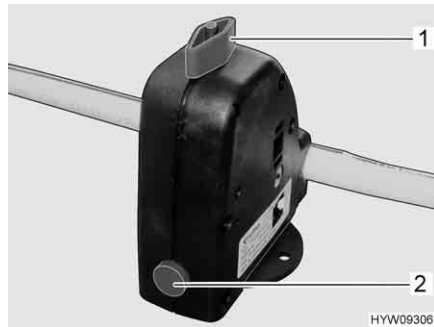


Fig. 193 Safety/drainage valve (boiler)

Position See chapter 16.

Filling/emptying the boiler

The boiler can be supplied with water from the water tank.

Filling the boiler with water:

- Switch on the 12 V power supply on the panel.
- Close the safety/drainage valve. Turn the knob (Fig. 193,1) perpendicular to the safety/drainage valve and push the push button (Fig. 193,2) in.
- Set all the water taps to "Hot" and open them. The water pump is turned on. The warm water pipes are filled with water.

- Keep the water taps open until the water flowing out of the water taps has no bubbles in it. This is the only way to ensure that the boiler is full of water.
- Close all water taps.






Emptying the boiler:

- Switch off hot water production.
- Open the safety/drainage valve. To do this turn the knob (Fig. 193,1) parallel to the safety/drainage valve. The push button (Fig. 193,2) jumps out. The boiler is drained to the outside by the safety/drainage valve.
- Check whether the water has been drained completely from the boiler (approx. 10 litres).

Operating modes

The hot-water heater with the boiler can be operated with various energy sources.

Selecting operating mode:

- Turn rotary push button (Fig. 191,6) until the menu symbol operating mode (Fig. 192,3) flashes.
- Press rotary push button.
- Turn rotary push button until the desired operating mode is displayed:
 -  Gas operation
 -  Electrical operation (900 W)
 -  Electrical operation (1800 W)
 -  Gas and electrical operation (900 W)
 -  Gas and electrical operation (1800 W)
- Press the rotary push button to save the set operating mode. To revert to the original setting: Press back button (Fig. 191,7).



- ▷ 230 V electrical operation is only possible when the vehicle is connected to the 230 V power supply.
- ▷ Select the output level for 230 V electrical operation so that it corresponds to the fuse protection of the 230 V connection (900 W for 3.9 A fuse, 1800 W for 7.8 A fuse).

The combination of gas operation and 230 V electrical operation shortens the time required to heat up the vehicle.

Setting the fan:

- Turn rotary push button (Fig. 191,6) until the fan menu symbol (Fig. 192,4) flashes.
- Press rotary push button.
- Turn rotary push button until the required value is displayed:
 - OFF: Fan is switched off.
 - VENT: Air circulation
 - ECO: Low fan setting
 - HIGH: High fan setting
 - BOOST: Fast room heating. Boost is available if the current room temperature is at least 10 °C below the selected room temperature.
- Press rotary push button to save the value set. If you do not wish to change the value originally set: Press back button (Fig. 191,7).

- Setting the timer:*
- Turn rotary push button (Fig. 191,6) until the timer menu symbol (Fig. 192,9) flashes.
 - Press rotary push button. The start time is displayed and the hour display flashes.
 - Turn rotary push button until the hour of the selected start time is displayed.
 - Press rotary push button. The minute display flashes.
 - Turn rotary push button until the minute of the selected start time is displayed.
 - Press rotary push button.
 - Proceed in the same way to set the switch-off time, the required room temperature, the hot water setting and the fan setting.
 - Press rotary push button. The timer is activated. The timer symbol (Fig. 192,9) flashes when the timer is programmed and active.



- ▷ The service menu contains items that generally only need to be set once (language, background brightness, calibration), as well as information for service centres (version numbers).

Fault display

The warning symbol (Fig. 192,7) flashes in the event of a warning. The heater continues to operate. In the event of only a temporary fault, the warning symbol goes out automatically.

In the event of a warning, the control unit displays the error code for the fault. The heater is switched off. Press rotary push button to restart the heater.



- ▷ Further information can be obtained in the manufacturer's instruction manual.

9.2.4 Alde hot-water heater and boiler (special equipment)



- ▷ Never run hot-water heater without heating fluid. Observe notes in chapter 12.
- ▷ Never drill holes in the floor. This might damage the hot-water pipes.

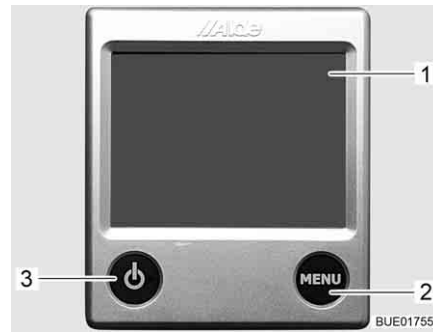


- ▷ The circulating pump must always be turned on when the hot-water heater is in operation.
- ▷ We recommend to bleed the heating system after the initial heater operation and to check the glycol content. Observe notes in chapter 12.
- ▷ When the heater is turned on, it starts with the last settings used.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment, there is an underfloor heater in the driver's cabin.
- ▷ For further information, see the separate manufacturer's instruction manual and observe the maintenance instructions found in chapter 12.

Position See chapter 16.

Operating unit The operating unit is divided into two sections:

- Display (touch screen)
- Operating buttons



- 1 Display (touch screen)
- 2 "Menu" button
- 3 "On/Off" button

Fig. 194 Operating unit (hot-water heater)



- ▷ When no button is pressed, the operating unit automatically switches to home position after two minutes.
- ▷ Changes to the settings are saved automatically after 10 seconds.

Operating buttons

The operating buttons have the following functions:

Pos. in Fig. 194	Button	Function
2	MENU	Open adjustment menu
3		Activate heating

Display

The display (Fig. 194,1) is designed as a touch screen. Touching the symbols calls up the relevant function.






Fig. 195 Start screen (operating unit)

Start screen

The Start screen appears on the display after the heater is switched on. The Start screen contains the following information:

Symbol	Signification
	This symbol appears when the circulating pump is activated
	This symbol appears when the Automatic start function of the heater is activated
	This symbol appears when the daytime automatic mode function is activated
	This symbol appears when the night-time automatic mode function is activated
	This symbol appears when a switching facility for gas bottles is activated








Symbol	Signification
	This symbol appears when a voltage of 230 V is present at the heater
	The internal temperature is displayed next to this symbol
	The external temperature is displayed next to this symbol if an external sensor is fitted

Adjustment menu The "MENU" button calls up the adjustment menu. The meanings of the individual symbols are described in the following table.



Fig. 196 Adjustment menu (operating unit)

The values can be increased or reduced via the "+" or "-" symbols.

Symbol	Signification
	Setting the desired temperature (from +5 °C to +30 °C)
	Setting the water temperature in the boiler
	Setting the heat output in electrical operation
	Heater button in gas operation On/Off
	Tool menu button
	AC button for switching on the automatic air conditioning (only visible when the Truma Aventa air conditioning unit is installed)
	Button for activated functions

Tool menus The various heater functions can be called up and adjusted via the tool menus. The arrow symbols are used to change between the menus. The meanings of the individual symbols are described in the manufacturer's instruction manual.



Selecting the operating mode

The hot-water heater can be operated with the following energy sources:

- Gas operation
- 230 V electrical operation
- Gas and 230 V electrical operation

The operating mode is selected from the operating unit.

Selecting gas operation:

- Press " " button. The button lights up green. The gas operation is activated.
- Press " " button again. The button lights up blue. The gas operation is switched off.

Selecting 230 V electrical operation:



- Press the "+" button next to the "⚡" symbol until the desired heat output is reached.
- ▷ Select the output level during 230 V electrical operation in such a way that it corresponds to the 230 V connection protection:
 - Level 1 (1 kW) at 6 A
 - Level 2 (2 kW) at 10 A
 - Level 3 (3 kW) at 16 A

Selecting gas and 230 V electrical operation:


- Select gas operation and 230 V electrical operation on the operating unit.
- ▷ If gas and 230 V electrical operation is selected and if the vehicle is connected to the 230 V power supply, then the hot-water heater at first only operates in 230 V electric operation. Only if the heat output is insufficient does the gas operation also automatically switch on.
- ▷ The gas operation is only possible when the regulator tap on the gas bottle and the gas isolator tap are opened.
- ▷ 230 V electrical operation is only possible when the vehicle is connected to the 230 V power supply.

When the heater is turned on, it starts with the last set operating mode.

Switching on the heater:

- Press " " button. The Start screen appears in the display. The heater starts automatically.

Switching off the heater:

- Press " " button. The heater is turned off.

Setting the rotational speed of the circulating pump



- ▷ The hot-water heater is equipped with a very powerful pump. In smaller vehicles, the pump can only be operated at full power if the pipes are bled. Otherwise, this will increase wear; loud operating noises are the result.



Fig. 197 Speed reduction

The rotational speed of the circulating pump can be set with the control knob (Fig. 197,2). At a lower rotary speed, the operating sounds of the pump are quieter.

The control knob is located on the circulating pump (Fig. 197,1).

Setting the output:

- Turn the control knob (Fig. 197,2) in an anticlockwise direction. The output is reduced.
- Rotate the control knob in a clockwise direction. The output is increased.

3-way valve

For models with a rear bed, a 3-way valve is connected to the hot water heater circulation. The 3-way valve is installed in the rear garage. The 3-way valve can be accessed via an external flap.



Fig. 198 3-way valve

Opening the heat circulation in the rear area:

- Set the lever (Fig. 198,2) of the 3-way valve (Fig. 198,1) parallel to the straight flow direction (Fig. 198).

Locking the heat circulation in the rear area:

- Set the lever (Fig. 198,2) of the 3-way valve (Fig. 198,1) transverse to the straight flow direction.

**Alde heat exchanger
(special equipment)**


- ▷ The heat exchanger only works when the vehicle engine is running.
- ▷ If the heat exchanger is not being used (as in the summer), the heat exchanger on the stopcock should be shut off.

The heat exchanger can be used to heat the living area of the vehicle during travel without operating the hot-water heater in the living area.

The heat exchanger is connected to the vehicle engine's cooling circuit and thus has the same function as the vehicle heater.

Heat output is set with the living area's heating regulator.

The heat exchanger stopcock is located directly on the exchanger.

**Turning on the vehicle
heating by heat exchanger:**

- Make sure the heat exchanger stopcock is open.
- Press the "⏻" button (Fig. 194,3) on the operating unit (Fig. 194). The Start screen appears in the display. That turns on the heating control system and makes the circulating pump run.
- Press "MENU" button (Fig. 194,2).
- Turn off gas operation or 230 V electrical operation (if turned on).
- Set the desired room temperature. To do that, press the "+" or "-" button next to the "🏠" symbol.

**Turning off the vehicle
heating by heat exchanger:**

- Press the "⏻" button (Fig. 194,3) on the operating unit (Fig. 194).



Fig. 199 Alde heat exchanger

- Turning on:** ■ Set stopcock handle (Fig. 199,1) parallel to the pipe.
- Turning off:** ■ Set stopcock handle (Fig. 199,1) at a right angle to the pipe.

Position The heat exchanger is installed in the rear bench seat of the central seating group.

**Alde auxiliary circulating
pump (special equipment)**


- ▷ The auxiliary circulating pump works only if the heat exchanger has been installed and started, and the hot-water heater is running.

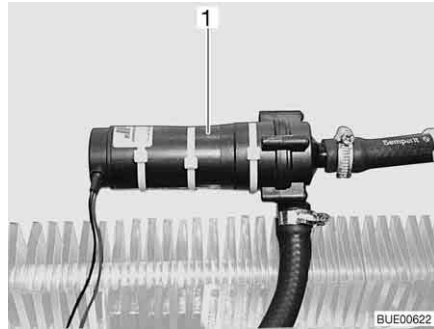


Fig. 200 Auxiliary circulating pump

The auxiliary circulating pump (Fig. 200,1) can be used to heat the vehicle engine when parked.

The auxiliary circulating pump is connected to the vehicle engine's cooling circuit and thus functions as an engine heater.



Fig. 201 Operating switch for auxiliary circulating pump

The auxiliary circulating pump switch (Fig. 201) is located next to the hot-water heater operating unit. The yellow indicator lamp illuminates when the pump is operated.

Filling/emptying the boiler



The boiler can be supplied with water from the water tank.

▷ Depending on the model, the vehicle is fitted with one or two drain cocks.

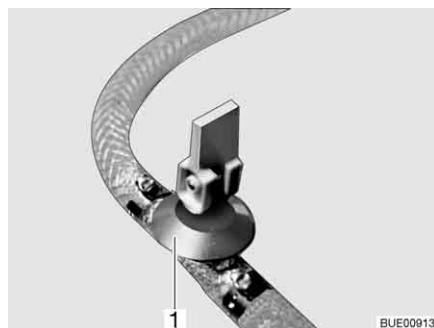


Fig. 202 Drain cock

Filling the boiler with water:

- Close the drain cock(s). Position the rocking lever (Fig. 202,1) horizontally.
- Switch on 12 V power supply on the panel.

- Set all the water taps to "Hot" and open them. The water pump is turned on. The warm water pipes are filled with water.
- Keep the taps open until the water flowing out of the taps has no bubbles in it. This is the only way to ensure that the boiler is full of water.
- Close all water taps.

Emptying the boiler:

- Switch off the boiler.
- Open all water taps and set to the central position.
- Open drain cock(s) (Fig. 202). To do so, set the rocking lever (Fig. 202,1) in a vertical position. The boiler is drained to the outside.
- Check whether the water has been drained completely from the boiler (approx. 10 litres).



- ▷ For further information, see the separate manufacturer's instruction manual and observe the maintenance instructions found in chapter 12.

Position of the drain cock(s)

See chapter 16.

9.2.5 Wall flue

Fresh air and exhaust gases of the heater system are conducted in a two-chamber wall flue.



- ▷ Park the vehicle such that the wall flue gets enough fresh air.
- ▷ The wall flue must be free at all times. Do not cover the wall flue.
- ▷ When camping in winter, maintain wall flue free of snow and ice.
- ▷ Check the wall flue periodically depending on the weather (snow, leaf fall, dirt, etc.). If necessary, clean the wall flue.
- ▷ When washing the vehicle do not aim the water jet directly at the wall flue.
- ▷ When disregarding this, the flawless operation of the heater can not be guaranteed.



Fig. 203 Wall flue (hot-water heater)



Fig. 204 Wall flue (hot-air heater)

The wall flue is mounted on the left side wall.

9.2.6 Electrical floor warming unit (special equipment)



- ▶ On models with electrical floor warming unit, never drill holes in the floor or screw in any screws. Careful with sharp objects. There is danger of a power cut or a short circuit due to damage to a heater wire.



- ▷ Do not cover the transformer. Danger of overheating!



- ▷ The electrical floor warming unit only operates if the vehicle is connected to the 230 V power supply.
- ▷ The output of the electrical floor warming unit alone is not sufficient to heat the living area.



Fig. 205 Transformer for electrical floor warming unit



Fig. 206 Switch for electrical floor warming unit

The transformer (Fig. 205,1) for the electrical floor warming unit is installed either in the bench seat or in the bedding box, depending on the model.

Switching on:

- Connect the vehicle to the 230 V power supply (see chapter 8).
- Press the rocker switch (Fig. 206,2). The indicator lamp (Fig. 206,1) on the switch is illuminated.

Switching off:

- Press the rocker switch (Fig. 206,2). The indicator lamp (Fig. 206,1) on the switch goes off.

After switching off, the floor remains warm for a while, due to residual heat.

If the transformer is overloaded, the overload protection is actuated. The pin (Fig. 205,2) jumps out.

Switching on overload protection:

- Press the pin (Fig. 205,2) on the overload protection when the transformer is cooled.

9.3 Air conditioning unit (special equipment)

9.3.1 Truma Aventa air conditioning unit



- ▷ The cooling circuit may only be opened by the manufacturer or an authorised workshop.
- ▷ Do not block the air inlets and air outlets.



- ▷ Do not drive on any gradients or inclines greater than 8 % when the air conditioning unit is in operation. Otherwise the compressor could be damaged.
- ▷ Do not operate the unit in cooling mode for extended periods when the vehicle is on an incline. Condensation can enter the interior.



- ▷ The air conditioning unit only runs if the vehicle is connected to a 230 V power supply.
- ▷ The external 230 V power supply must be protected by a fuse of at least 6 A. It is otherwise not possible to operate the air conditioning unit properly.
- ▷ Heating at external temperatures below 4 °C is not possible, as the heating output then falls sharply. The unit switches to defrosting for a short time at temperatures between 4 °C and 7 °C. Unrestricted heating operation is possible at external temperatures above 7 °C.
- ▷ Always point the remote control at the infrared receiver when using it.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment, the air conditioning unit can be operated from a mobile terminal (e.g. smartphone, tablet PC) via an app (see section 9.4). The Truma app can be loaded for common mobile terminals via the respective app stores.
- ▷ Also read the manufacturer's instruction manual.

Operating modes

The air conditioning unit can be operated in the following modes:

- Automatic
- Cooling
- Heater
- Air circulation

Remote control

All functions of the air conditioning unit can be operated via the remote control.



- 1 Display
- 2 On/Off button
- 3 Buttons "+" and "-" for temperature selection
- 4 Sliding door for field with setting buttons
- 5 Fan setting selection button (three levels)
- 6 Mode selection button

Fig. 207 Remote control (air conditioning unit)

Automatic mode

In automatic mode the desired temperature merely has to be set.

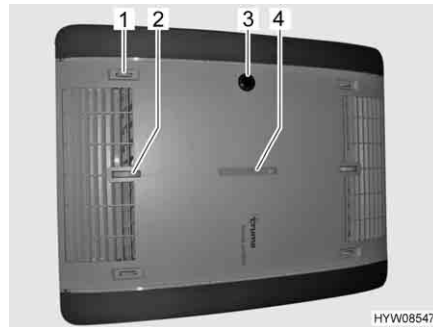
Depending on the room temperature, the air conditioning unit automatically selects cooling or heating mode and the fan setting.

Switching on:



- Press the On/Off button (Fig. 207,2). The last settings selected are accepted.
- ▷ The circulation fan runs after switching on. The compressor switches itself on after no more than 3 minutes. The blue LED (cooling) or the yellow LED (heating) flashes.
- Use the "+" and "-" buttons (Fig. 207,3) to set the desired temperature.

- Switching off:*
- Press the On/Off button (Fig. 207,2). The lighting can continue to be operated.



- 1 Air distribution right/left
- 2 Air distribution ceiling/floor
- 3 IR receiver, function display, manual on/off
- 4 Air distribution front/rear

Fig. 208 Function display and air distribution (air conditioning unit)

Operation and display on the unit

Certain functions can be operated directly on the unit.

- Air distribution adjustment:*
- Set the small adjustment wheel and sliding regulator for stepless air distribution as desired.

- Switching on/off manually:*
- Press the micro button (e.g. with a ballpoint pen if the remote control is not in reach).

Function display

Status LED	Signification
Blue LED flashes	Compressor starts up (cooling mode)
Blue LED lights up	Cooling operation
Yellow LED flashes	Compressor starts up (heating mode)
Yellow LED lights up	Heating mode
Red LED flashes	Data is transferred
Red LED lights up	Fault

Manual mode

In the manual mode, the cooling, heater, and air circulation can be set separately on the remote control.

- Switching on the cooling:*
- Press the On/Off button (Fig. 207,2).
 - Press the mode selection button (Fig. 207,6) until the cooling symbol appears in the display (Fig. 207,1).
 - Use the "+" and "-" buttons (Fig. 207,3) to set the desired temperature.
 - Use the "✂" selection button (Fig. 207,5) to set the desired fan level.

When the room temperature set on the remote control is reached, the compressor switches itself off and the blue LED in the IR receiver goes out. The circulation fan continues to run.

When the room temperature rises above the set temperature, the unit automatically switches itself back to cooling mode.

- Switching on the heater:*
- Press the On/Off button (Fig. 207,2).
 - Press the mode selection button (Fig. 207,6) until the heating symbol appears in the display (Fig. 207,1).
 - Use the "+" and "-" buttons (Fig. 207,3) to set the desired temperature.
 - Use the "✂" selection button (Fig. 207,5) to set the desired fan level.

When the room temperature set on the remote control is reached, the compressor switches itself off and the yellow LED in the IR receiver goes out. The circulation fan continues to run.

When the room temperature falls below the set temperature, the unit automatically switches itself back to heating mode.

Switching on air circulation:

- Press the On/Off button (Fig. 207,2).
- Press the mode selection button (Fig. 207,6) until the air circulation symbol appears in the display (Fig. 207,1).
- Use the "+" and "-" buttons (Fig. 207,3) to set the desired temperature.
- Use the "✖" selection button (Fig. 207,5) to set the desired fan level.

In air circulation mode, the inside air is circulated and is cleaned by the filter. No LEDs light up in the IR receiver.



- 1 Buttons for setting the time and the timer
- 2 Send button (repeat data transfer)
- 3 Micro button "RESET" (resetting to the factory setting)
- 4 Setup button for start-up
- 5 Light button (for operating the lighting)
- 6 Soft-start button (for quiet cooling operation)
- 7 Time button (for setting the time)
- 8 "TIMER" buttons for switching time preselection on/off

Fig. 209 Remote control with setting buttons (air conditioning unit)

Activating soft-start:

- Press the soft-start button (Fig. 209,6). The fan then runs at low speed in cooling mode, which makes it especially quiet.

Setting the time:

- Press the time button (Fig. 209,7).
- Set the hours and minutes with the buttons (Fig. 209,1).

Switching on the timer:

- Press the On/Off button (Fig. 207,2).
- Set the desired mode and temperature.

Programming the switching on time:

- Press "ON" button (Fig. 209,8).
- Press the buttons for setting the time (Fig. 209,1) until the desired time span until switch-on is reached.
- Press "ON" button (Fig. 209,8).

Programming the switch-off time:

- Press "OFF" button (Fig. 209,8).
- Press the buttons for setting the time (Fig. 209,1) until the desired time span until switch-off is reached.
- Press "OFF" button (Fig. 209,8).

Deactivating the timer:

- Press the "ON" or "OFF" button (Fig. 209,8) again.

The integrated timer enables the switch-on/switch-off time for the air conditioning unit to be set between 15 minutes and 24 hours in advance (calculated from the current time).

Switching on the lighting:

- Press the light button (Fig. 209,5). The light is switched on at the last set dimming level.

Dimming the lighting: ■ Press the light button (Fig. 209,5) and keep it pressed until the desired brightness is reached.

Switching off the lighting: ■ Press the light button (Fig. 209,5).



▷ The Setup button (Fig. 209,4) is used to connect the remote control with the air conditioning unit during first set-up.

9.3.2 Telair



▷ Always wait at least 2 minutes between switching off and switching on again. Otherwise the compressor will be damaged.

▷ If the unit is operating, always open at least one ventilation flap.

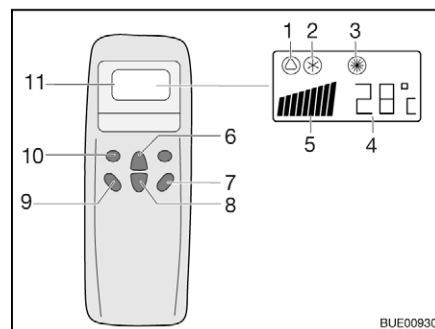


▷ The air conditioning unit only runs if the vehicle is connected to a 230 V power supply.

▷ In the winter, vehicle heating can be supported but not replaced by the air conditioning unit.

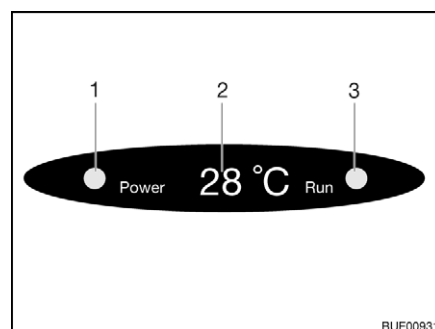
▷ Following switch-on the air conditioning unit needs approx. 3 minutes until the compressor starts to run and cold air or hot air is output.

▷ Also read the manufacturer's instruction manual.



- 1 Symbol for automatic
- 2 Symbol for cooling
- 3 Symbol for heater
- 4 Temperature (set) display
- 5 Fan speed display
- 6 Temperature increase button
- 7 "ON/OFF" button
- 8 Temperature reduction button
- 9 Ventilation speed button
- 10 "Mode" button
- 11 Display

Fig. 210 Remote control



- 1 Mains connection indicator lamp
- 2 Temperature (current) display
- 3 Mode indicator lamp
Green: Cooling
Red: Heater

Fig. 211 Display on the diffuser

To execute the individual switching commands, always point the remote control in the direction of the receiver.

Operating modes

- Automatic
- Cooling
- Heater

- Switching on:*
- Press the "ON/OFF" button (Fig. 210,7).
 - Press the "Mode" button (Fig. 210,10) as often as required until the required operating mode (Fig. 210,1, 2 or 3) is indicated on the display. The corresponding indicator lamp on the diffusor display (Fig. 211,3) lights up.
 - Use the temperature increase button (Fig. 210,6) or temperature reduction button (Fig. 210,8) to set the required temperature.
 - Use the ventilation speed button (Fig. 210,9) to select the required ventilation level.

- Switching off:*
- Press the "ON/OFF" button (Fig. 210,7).



- ▷ If the air conditioning unit has run in heating mode, the blower will run on for some minutes in order to dissipate the heat completely.

9.4 Controlling Truma appliances with mobile terminal (special equipment)

Depending on the equipment, a Truma iNet-Box is installed in the vehicle. With the Truma iNet-Box, the heater and the air conditioning unit can be operated from a mobile terminal (e.g. smartphone, tablet PC) via an app. The Truma app can be downloaded for common mobile terminals from the respective app stores.

There are two possibilities for the communication between the Truma appliance and the mobile terminal:

- Bluetooth connection (limited range)
- Connection via the mobile communication network (a mini SIM card with own telephone number and sufficient credit is required; not included in the scope of delivery). Operating is carried out via SMS.

The operation of the Truma appliances is possible from multiple mobile terminals. In order to do this, the Truma app must be installed on each mobile terminal.



- ▷ When the mobile terminal has an Internet connection, the instructions for operating the Truma appliances are downloaded and stored. The instructions will then be available at any time (even without Internet connection).

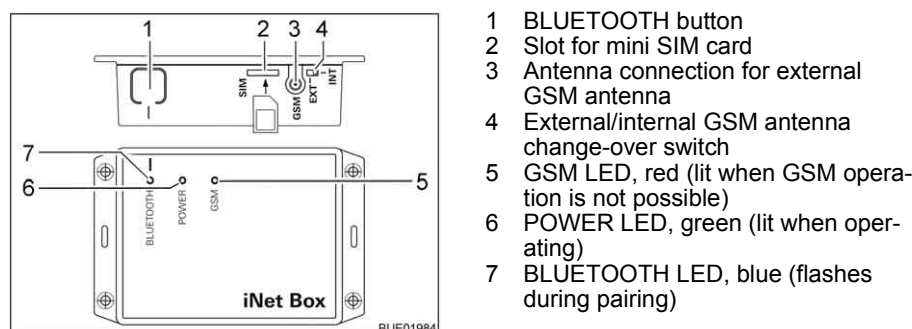


Fig. 212 Truma iNet-Box

Setting up the Bluetooth connection:

- Install Truma app on the mobile terminal.
- Switch on the 12 V power supply of the vehicle on the panel.
- Switch on Bluetooth on the mobile terminal.

- Start Truma app and select the menu items "SETTINGS – Setup Truma iNet-Box – Configure Bluetooth". The individual steps are described in detail in the Truma app.
- Press the BLUETOOTH button (Fig. 212,1) on the iNet-Box for 1 second. The Truma iNet-Box will be visible in the mobile terminal for approx. 2 minutes (name: "Truma iNet-Box"). During this period, the blue BLUETOOTH LED (Fig. 212,7) will be flashing.
- Confirm the connection to "Truma iNet Box" in the Bluetooth settings of the mobile terminal. The communication is established as soon as the blue LED on the Truma iNet-Box is permanently lit.

Setting up the mobile communication connection:

- Set up the Bluetooth connection as described above.
- After setting up Bluetooth, press the "Next" button.
- Carefully insert the mini SIM card with own telephone number and sufficient credit into the slot (Fig. 212,2) of the Truma iNet-Box as shown until it engages. The red GSM LED (Fig. 212,5) must be flashing continuously. If the red LED goes out after 20 seconds: check mini SIM card.
- Enter PIN and telephone number of the mini SIM card in the iNet-Box, as well as a freely eligible name in the respective fields of the setup wizard.
- Press the "Ready" button.

The Truma iNet-Box automatically changes from the mobile communication network to the Bluetooth connection as soon as a stored mobile terminal is located in the Bluetooth reception range. When leaving the reception range, it will automatically change to the mobile communication network (if it has been set up). The Truma iNet-Box can also be operated without mini SIM card. In this case, operating will only be possible within a limited radius via Bluetooth.

Operating Truma appliances via Truma app:



- Press the "REMOTE CONTROL" button.
- Carry out the operating commands.
- ▷ For proper functioning of the operation via SMS it is necessary that the standard SMS app of the mobile terminal uses its telephone number as sender and does not manipulate the text. Do not use any SMS connectors.
- ▷ Further information can be obtained in the manufacturer's instruction manual.

Position The Truma iNet-Box is installed in the living area (e.g. in the wardrobe).

9.5 Cooker



- ▶ During operation of the gas cooker, do not leave the gas cooker unattended. Even if the gas cooker cannot be overseen for only a short time (e.g. Visit to the toilet), switch the gas cooker off.
- ▶ Never let gas escape unburned due to danger of explosion.
- ▶ Before using the cooker make sure that there is sufficient ventilation. Open windows or the skylight.
- ▶ Do not use gas-operated cooking and baking facilities for heating purposes.
- ▶ Do not fit any curtains in the immediate proximity of the cooker. Fire hazard!
- ▶ Always protect your hands with cooking gloves or potholders when handling hot pots, pans and similar items. There is a risk of injury!

9.5.1 Gas cooker



- ▶ During activation and operation of the gas cooker, no flammable objects or highly inflammable objects such as dishcloths, napkins etc. must be near the gas cooker. Fire hazard!
- ▶ The process of ignition must be visible from above and must not be covered by cooking pans placed on the cooker.
- ▶ If there is a flame protection, always put it up when using the gas cooker.
- ▶ The gas cooker cover is held closed by a spring. When closing there is danger of getting injured!



- ▷ Do not place hot objects such as cooking pans on the sink cover. The plastic can become deformed.
- ▷ Do not use the glass gas cooker cover as a hob.
- ▷ Do not close the gas cooker cover while the gas cooker is in operation.
- ▷ Do not apply pressure on the gas cooker cover when it is closed.
- ▷ Do not place hot cooking pans on the gas cooker cover.
- ▷ Keep the gas cooker cover open after cooking until the burners are cool. Otherwise the glass plate could shatter.



- ▷ Only use pots and pans whose diameter is appropriate for the gas cooker burners.
- ▷ When the flame goes out, the thermocouple automatically cuts the gas supply.
- ▷ Further information can be obtained in the device manufacturer's instruction manual.

The vehicle kitchen unit is fitted with a three-burner gas cooker.

The operating controls for the gas cooker are located directly at the gas cooker.

Electronic ignition

The gas cooker is equipped with a lighting knob.



Fig. 213 Operating controls for gas cooker

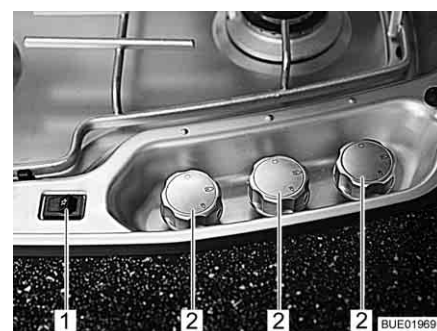


Fig. 214 Operating controls for gas cooker (alternative)

Switching on:

- Open the regulator tap on the gas bottle and the gas isolator tap "Cooker".
- Open the gas cooker cover.
- Press the control knob (Fig. 213,1 or Fig. 214,2) of the desired burner and turn it to the ignition position (large flame).
- Press the control knob down and hold it.

- Press the rocker switch (Fig. 213,2 or Fig. 214,1). Ignition sparks are generated at the burner.
- Once the flame is burning, the control knob must be held down for 10 to 15 seconds, until the thermocouple automatically keeps the gas supply open.
- Release the control knob and turn to the desired setting.
- If ignition is unsuccessful, repeat the entire procedure.

Switching off:

- Turn the control knob to the 0-position. The flame fades.
- Close the gas isolator tap "Cooker" and the regulator tap on the gas bottle.

9.5.2 Gas oven (Dometic) (special equipment)



- ▶ Keep the ventilation openings on the gas oven open at all times.
- ▶ There must be no flammable or highly inflammable objects such as dishcloths, clothes, etc. near the gas oven when it is being lit or during operation. Fire hazard!
- ▶ If ignition has not taken place, repeat the entire procedure. If necessary, check if there is gas and/or current in the gas oven.
- ▶ If the gas oven still does not work, close the gas isolator tap and notify your service centre.
- ▶ If the burner flame is accidentally extinguished, turn the control knob to "0" and leave the burner off for at least 1 minute. Then ignite it again.
- ▶ Parts of the gas oven become very hot during operation. Never touch hot parts with bare hands.
- ▶ Place the meals, wire rack and drip pan into the gas oven so that they do not come into contact with the flame.
- ▶ Only ignite the oven and grill when the oven door is open.
- ▶ Always leave the oven door half open when grilling.
- ▶ Do not use the grill for longer than 25 minutes.



- ▷ There are two different versions of the gas oven, depending on the model. Although their appearance is not identical, operation is the same for both.
- ▷ Depending on the model the gas oven may come equipped with a grill.
- ▷ Before using the gas oven for the first time run it for 30 minutes at maximum temperature without any contents.
- ▷ When the flame goes out, the thermocouple automatically cuts the gas supply.
- ▷ A safety switch prevents ignition when the oven door is closed.
- ▷ If the ignition procedure fails repeatedly, turn the control knob to "0". Wait at least 1 minute and then ignite the gas oven manually. If necessary, check if there is gas and/or current in the gas oven. If the gas oven still does not work, close the gas isolator tap and notify your service centre.
- ▷ Further information can be obtained in the manufacturer's instruction manual.

The gas oven is equipped with electronic ignition.



Fig. 215 Gas oven (Dometic TecTower)



Fig. 216 Gas oven (Dometic)

The meaning of the symbols on the control knobs (Fig. 215,1 and Fig. 216,1) of the two gas ovens is identical:

-  and  stand for the oven
-  and  stand for the grill.

Switching on the oven:

- Open the regulator tap on the gas bottle and the gas isolator tap "Oven".
- Open oven door completely. The safety switch then releases the ignition.
- Press and hold control knob and turn it anti-clockwise to the required setting. Keep control knob pressed for a further 5-10 seconds. Ignition will take place automatically.
- Release control knob.
- Close oven door.

Switching on the grill:

- Open the regulator tap on the gas bottle and the gas isolator tap "Oven".
- Open the oven door to at least the first locking position (approx. 45°).
- Press and hold control knob and turn it clockwise to the grill symbol. Keep control knob pressed for a further 5-10 seconds. Ignition will take place automatically.
- Release control knob.
- ▷ Do not close the oven door when grilling.



Switching off:

- Turn the control knob to "O". The flame fades.
- Close the gas isolator tap "Oven" and the regulator tap on the gas bottle.

9.5.3 Microwave oven (special equipment)



- ▶ Only qualified personnel may repair the microwave oven. Improper repairs can cause major risks to the user.
- ▶ The protection device against the escape of microwave energy should never be removed.
- ▶ Use the microwave oven only if it has been properly installed.
- ▶ Only use the microwave oven when the door seal is free of damage.
- ▶ Never leave the microwave oven unattended when it is in operation.
- ▶ If there is smoke, keep the microwave oven closed, switch it off and interrupt the power supply.



- ▷ Operate the microwave oven only with the rotary plate and the rotary cross in place.
- ▷ Use only crockery suitable for microwave use.
- ▷ Only operate the microwave with appropriate contents and never run it empty.



- ▷ For cooking times under 2 minutes: First twist the cooking time control knob past "2" and then twist it back to the desired cooking time.
- ▷ Further information can be obtained in the manufacturer's instruction manual.



Fig. 217 Operating controls for microwave oven

Switching on:

- Press the key (Fig. 217,3) to open the door and place food into the cooking area.
- Close the door. A clicking noise can be heard when it engages.
- Select the output on the control knob (Fig. 217,1).
- Select the cooking time with the control knob (Fig. 217,2). Cooking begins.

The end of the cooking process is signaled by a signal tone. The microwave oven will switch off automatically.

Switching off:

- Press the key (Fig. 217,3) to open the door and take out the food.

9.5.4 Extractor hood (special equipment)

Depending on the equipment, the cooker is equipped with an extractor hood (vented or recirculating).

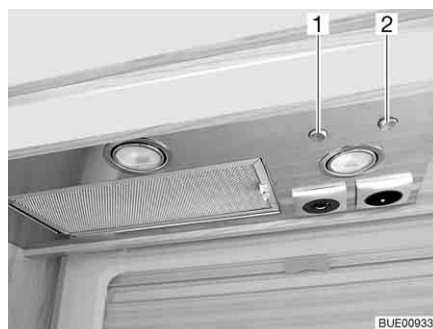


Fig. 218 Vented extractor hood



Fig. 219 Recirculating extractor hood

Vented extractor hood

The kitchen fumes are aspirated above the cooker, cleaned with the aid of a metal grease filter, and blown directly to the outside.

To switch on the extractor hood, press the flip switch (Fig. 218,2).

Use the flip switch (Fig. 218,1) to switch on the two lights in the extractor hood.

Recirculating extractor hood

The kitchen fumes are aspirated above the cooker, cleaned with the aid of a metal grease filter and an active carbon filter. The cleaned air is then conducted back into the interior of the vehicle.

To switch on the extractor hood, press the flip switch (Fig. 219,1).



- ▷ Further information can be obtained in the manufacturer's instruction manual.

9.6 Refrigerator

During the journey, only operate the refrigerator via the 12 V power supply. At high ambient temperatures the refrigerator is unable to reach its full cooling power.



- ▷ When leaving the vehicle, always mount the refrigerator ventilation grill. Otherwise water can enter during rain.
- ▷ The cooling power of the refrigerator depends on the vehicle setup. The cooling power can decrease if the vehicle is inclined by 5° or more. Therefore, always park the vehicle on level ground.
- ▷ Absorption refrigerators operate at normal room temperature (approx. 21 °C) within the specified temperature range. At significantly higher ambient temperatures (> 30 °C), the cooling power is reduced.

9.6.1 Refrigerator ventilation grill

At high external temperatures, the full cooling power of the cooling unit is only guaranteed if the refrigerator is ventilated sufficiently. In order to achieve a better ventilation the refrigerator ventilation grill can be removed.

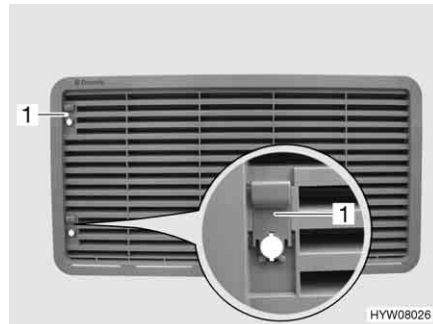


Fig. 220 Refrigerator ventilation grill (with sliding trap)



Fig. 221 Refrigerator ventilation grill (with screw)

Removing:

- Depending on the design, push the sliding trap (Fig. 220, 1) upwards or turn the screw (Fig. 221, 1) a quarter turn using a coin.
- Remove refrigerator ventilation grill.

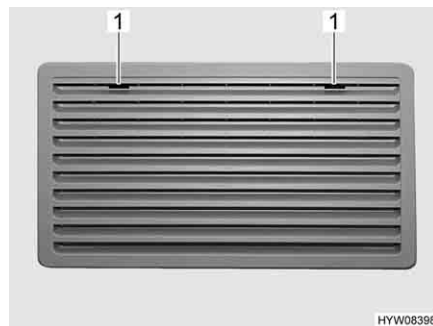


Fig. 222 Refrigerator ventilation grill (Thetford large)

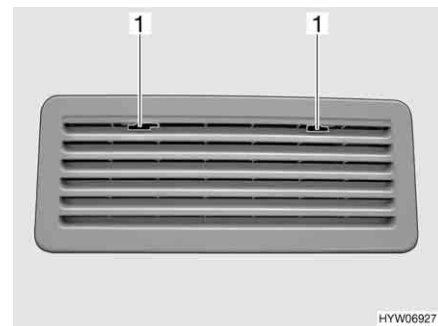


Fig. 223 Refrigerator ventilation grill (Thetford small)

Removing:

- Move the locking device (Fig. 222, 1 or Fig. 223, 1) to the middle.
- Remove refrigerator ventilation grill.

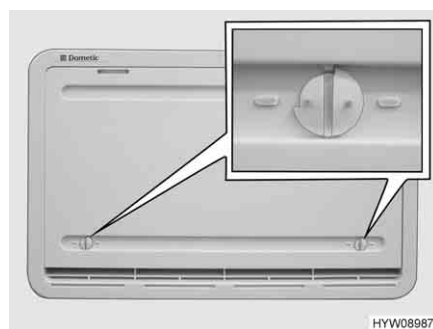


Fig. 224 Winter cover

Winter cover

If the refrigerator is to be operated at low external temperatures, the manufacturer recommends the use of a winter cover (Fig. 224) for the refrigerator ventilation grills.

The table below shows the temperature ranges in which the winter cover or the insulated winter cover may be used.

Temperature	Cover
Below 10 °C	Winter cover (for refrigerators with capacity below 130 litres: fit only on the lower ventilation grill)
Below -5 °C	Insulated winter cover (fit only on the lower ventilation grill)



- ▷ If the temperatures are higher than the indicated values, it is absolutely necessary to remove the winter cover. Otherwise the vehicle could be damaged.

Mounting:

- Open both locks (Fig. 224) (groove in horizontal position).
- Put winter cover in front of the ventilation grill.
- Lock the locks with a small coin (groove in vertical position).

Removing:

- Open both locks (Fig. 224) (groove in horizontal position).
- Remove winter cover from ventilation grill.



- ▷ The winter cover may remain mounted during the journey.

9.6.2 Dometic MES/AES

Depending on the equipment, different versions of the refrigerator will be installed.

Version MES Manual power selection, automatic ignition

Version AES Automatic and manual power selection, automatic ignition

Operating modes The refrigerator has 3 operating modes:

- 230 V operation
- 12 V operation
- Gas operation



- ▷ The refrigerator always requires a 12 V control voltage, regardless of which type of energy it is using. The control voltage is present as soon as the transformer/rectifier is switched on. Therefore the closed circuit current always flows even if the refrigerator is switched off. Always switch off the transformer/rectifier for a temporary lay-up.
- ▷ Close the gas isolator tap "Refrigerator" when the refrigerator is operated electrically.

230 V operation The refrigerator is operated via an external power supply.

12 V operation The refrigerator is operated via the vehicle battery.



- ▷ In the automatic mode (only AES version), the 12 V operation is only selected, when the vehicle engine is running.

Gas operation

The refrigerator is operated with gas from a connected gas bottle.



- ▷ If LPG is used, the gas burner must be cleaned more frequently.

Change-over between energy sources

During change-over between the different energy sources, intended delays are installed in the automatic mode (only AES version). This means, that after a change-over to a new energy source the refrigerator can not be operated immediately. When changing from 12 Volt operation to gas operation, the delay is 15 minutes. This prevents a change-over to gas operation when the vehicle is stopped briefly (e.g. stop to fill tank).

Stop to fill tank

- ▶ Open flames are prohibited at petrol stations.

If the refrigerator was manually set for gas operation during the journey: switch off the refrigerator in the petrol station area or change over to 12 V operation.

If the refrigerator was operated in the automatic mode during the journey (only in the case of the AES version) and the stop for filling the tank takes longer than 15 minutes: switch off the refrigerator. Otherwise, the AES will automatically change over to gas operation 15 minutes after stopping the vehicle engine.

Ignition fuse

When selecting gas operation the ignition fuse is opened automatically so gas can get into the burner. At the same time the electronic ignition is activated. If the gas flame is extinguished, e.g. by blast of wind, the ignition is activated immediately and re-ignites the gas. If there is a fault in gas operation, the illuminated buttons for Gas (Fig. 225,3) and Fault (Fig. 225,9) flash and an alarm sounds for 20 seconds.

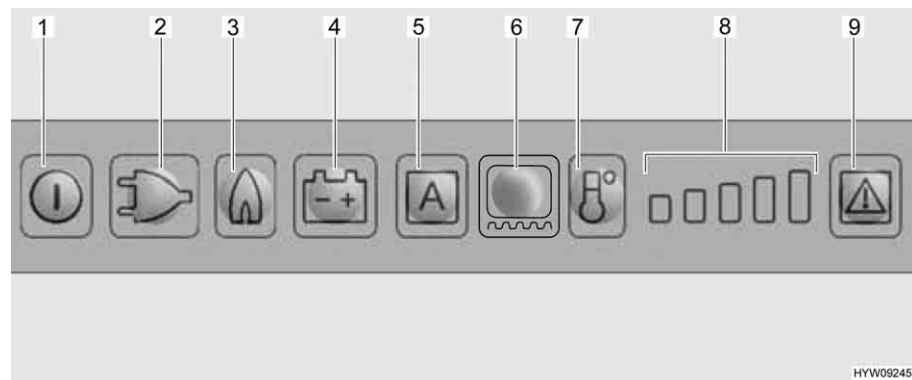
Operation

Fig. 225 LED operating panel (Dometic refrigerator)

- 1 On/Off button
- 2 Illuminated button for 230 V mode
- 3 Illuminated button for Gas mode
- 4 Illuminated button for 12 V mode
- 5 Illuminated button for AES operating mode (depending on the model)
- 6 Illuminated button for frame heater (depending on the model)
- 7 Cooling level button
- 8 Cooling level indicator
- 9 Illuminated button for Fault/Reset in gas mode



- ▷ If the refrigerator shall be operated with gas: Open the regulator tap on the gas bottle and the gas isolator tap "Refrigerator".

Switching on:

- Press and hold the On/Off button (Fig. 225,1) for about 2 seconds. The refrigerator switches on and the previously set operating mode is displayed.

Selecting operating mode:

- Press the illuminated button for the desired operating mode (Fig. 225,2 - 4) or the automatic mode "AES" (Fig. 225,5) (only in the case of AES version).

In the case of the AES version, the automatic energy selection is carried out in the following order as a function of the availability of the energy sources:

- 12 V solar (special equipment)
- 230 V AC
- 12 V DC
- Gas

Setting the refrigerating temperature:

- Use the cooling level button (Fig. 225,7) to set the refrigerating temperature. The cooling level indicator (Fig. 225,8) shows the selected thermostat setting.

Switching off:

- Press and hold the On/Off button (Fig. 225,1) for about 2 seconds.
- If the refrigerator had been operated with gas: Close the gas isolator tap "Refrigerator" and the regulator tap on the gas bottle.

Refrigerating temperature control

When turned on the first time the refrigerator automatically selects the middle thermostat position. This position can be adjusted manually using the cooling level button (Fig. 225,7). It takes a few hours till the refrigerator reaches its normal operating temperature. When changing over to another operating mode, the thermostat setting is kept.

Frame heater (depending on the model)

High external temperatures and high humidity can cause drops of water to form on the metal frame of the freezer compartment. To prevent any possible corrosion, the freezer compartment is equipped with a frame heater.



- ▷ When the frame heater is turned on, it uses about 4 Watts, including in gas operation. To avoid running down the living area battery, in gas mode refrain from running the frame heater in continuous operation or turn the frame heater off entirely.

The following options are available for operating times of the frame heater:

- 2 hours
- 5 hours
- Continuous operation (switched on for 30 minutes, then for 5 minutes on and 5 minutes off in alternating intervals)

Setting operating time:

- Switch on the frame heater for a 2 hour period: Push the frame heater illuminated button (Fig. 225,6) once. One bar is lit on the cooling level indicator (Fig. 225,8).
- Switch on the frame heater for a 5 hour period: Push the frame heater illuminated button (Fig. 225,6) twice. Two bars are lit on the cooling level indicator (Fig. 225,8).
- Setting frame heater for continuous operation: Push the frame heater illuminated button (Fig. 225,6) three times. Three bars are lit on the cooling level indicator (Fig. 225,8).

The cooling level indicator (Fig. 225,8) shows the operating time of the frame heater for several seconds.

Additional functions

If, after switching on or after setting, no further button is pressed, the brightness of the display is reduced after a few seconds. When pressing a button, the display will light up again. By pressing again, the desired function is activated.

In the automatic mode (only AES version), "AES" and the type of energy currently in use are displayed.

If the refrigerator door remains open for more than 2 minutes, a warning signal sounds.

In the event of a fault, the illuminated Fault button (Fig. 225,9) will flash. Also, either one of the illuminated buttons for operating mode or the cooling level indicator will flash. In addition, a warning signal will sound. For instructions on the display of errors and troubleshooting, see chapter 14.



- ▷ After eliminating a fault of the gas operation, press the illuminated Reset button (Fig. 225,9).
- ▷ Further information can be obtained from the separate instruction manual "Refrigerator".

9.6.3 Thetford N3000 E/A

Depending on the equipment, different versions of the refrigerator will be installed.

Thetford N3000 E model Manual power selection, automatic ignition

Thetford N3000 A model Automatic and manual power selection, automatic ignition

Operating modes

The refrigerator has 3 operating modes:

- 230 V operation
- 12 V operation
- Gas operation



- ▷ The refrigerator always requires a 12 V control voltage, regardless of which type of energy it is using. The control voltage is present as soon as the transformer/rectifier is switched on. Therefore the closed circuit current always flows even if the refrigerator is switched off. Always switch off the transformer/rectifier for a temporary lay-up.
- ▷ Close the gas isolator tap "Refrigerator" when the refrigerator is operated electrically.

230 V operation The refrigerator is operated via an external power supply.

12 V operation The refrigerator is operated via the vehicle battery.



- ▷ In the automatic mode, the 12 Volt operation is only selected, when the vehicle engine is running.

Gas operation

The refrigerator is operated with gas from a connected gas bottle.



- ▷ If LPG is used, a filter must be used. The filter must be installed by a qualified technician.

Change-over between energy sources

During change-over between the different energy sources, intended delays are installed in the version with automatic power selection. This means, that after a change-over to a new energy source the refrigerator can not be operated immediately. When changing from 12 Volt operation to gas operation, the delay is 15 minutes. This prevents a change-over to gas operation when the vehicle is stopped briefly (e.g. stop to fill tank).

Stop to fill tank


► Open flames are prohibited at petrol stations.

If the refrigerator was manually set for gas operation during the journey: switch off the refrigerator in the petrol station area or change over to 12 V operation.

If the refrigerator was operated in the automatic mode during the journey (only in the case of the version with automatic power selection) and the stop for filling the tank takes longer than 15 minutes: switch off the refrigerator. Otherwise, the automatic power selection system will automatically change over to gas operation 15 minutes after stopping the vehicle engine.

Ignition fuse

When selecting gas operation the ignition fuse is opened automatically so gas can get into the burner. At the same time the electronic ignition is activated. If the gas flame is extinguished, e.g. by blast of wind, the ignition is activated immediately and re-ignites the gas.

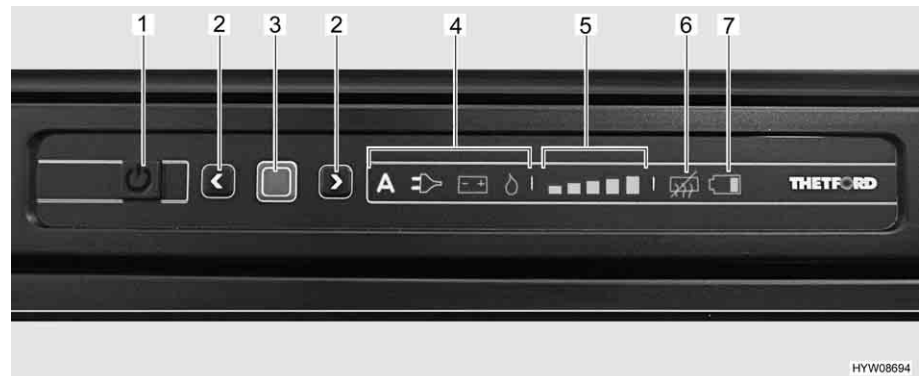
Operation


Fig. 226 LED operating panel (Thetford refrigerator)

- 1 On/Off button
- 2 Arrow keys
- 3 Confirmation button
- 4 Display of operating mode ("A" does not exist in all versions)
- 5 Cooling level indicator
- 6 Display "anti-condensation off"
- 7 Display "Battery flat" (not active)



► If the refrigerator shall be operated with gas: Open the regulator tap on the gas bottle and the gas isolator tap "Refrigerator".

Switching on:

- Press and hold the On/Off button (Fig. 226,1) for 1 second. The button lights up green. To save energy, after approximately 10 seconds the display is dimmed.
- Press confirmation button (Fig. 226,3). The operating mode previously selected is displayed.

- Selecting operating mode:*
- Press and hold the confirmation button (Fig. 226,3) for about 2 seconds. The operating mode symbols flash.
 - Manual power selection: use the arrow keys (Fig. 226,2) to select the desired energy source.
 - Automatic power selection (only version with automatic power selection): use the arrow keys (Fig. 226,2) to select the operating mode "A".
 - Confirm your selection with the confirmation button (Fig. 226,3).

In the case of the version with automatic power selection, the power selection is carried out in the following order as a function of the availability of the energy sources:

- 230 V AC
- 12 V DC
- Gas

- Setting the refrigerating temperature:*
- Press and hold the confirmation button (Fig. 226,3) for about 2 seconds. The operating mode symbols flash.
 - Press confirmation button (Fig. 226,3) again. The cooling level indicator (Fig. 226,5) flashes.
 - To change the setting, press the arrow keys (Fig. 226,2) until the desired setting is displayed.
 - Confirm your selection with the confirmation button (Fig. 226,3).

- Switching off:*
- Press and hold the On/Off button (Fig. 226,1) for about 2 seconds. All lights go out. Refrigerator is switched off.
 - If the refrigerator had been operated with gas: Close the gas isolator tap "Refrigerator" and the regulator tap on the gas bottle.

Refrigerating temperature control

After switching it on, the refrigerator automatically selects the previously selected thermostat position. This position can be adjusted manually by using the arrow keys (Fig. 226,2). It takes a few hours till the refrigerator reaches its normal operating temperature. When changing over to another operating mode, the thermostat setting is kept.

Additional functions

Flashing lamps on the operating unit indicate a fault. For instructions on troubleshooting, see chapter 14.



- ▷ Further information can be obtained from the separate instruction manual "Refrigerator".

9.6.4 Thetford N97

The refrigerator is equipped with a SES (Smart Energy System). It possesses an automatic and a manual power selection system, and an automatic ignition.

Operating modes

The refrigerator has 3 operating modes:

- 230 V operation
- 12 V operation
- Gas operation



- ▷ The refrigerator always requires a 12 V control voltage, regardless of which type of energy it is using. The control voltage is present as soon as the transformer/rectifier is switched on. Therefore the closed circuit current always flows even if the refrigerator is switched off. Always switch off the transformer/rectifier for a temporary lay-up.
- ▷ Close the gas isolator tap "Refrigerator" when the refrigerator is operated electrically.

230 V operation

The refrigerator is operated via an external power supply.

12 V operation

The refrigerator is operated via the vehicle battery.



- ▷ In the automatic mode, the 12 Volt operation is only selected, when the vehicle engine is running.

Gas operation

The refrigerator is operated with gas from a connected gas bottle.



- ▷ If LPG is used, a filter must be used. The filter must be installed by a qualified technician.

Change-over between energy sources

During change-over between the different energy sources, intended delays are installed in the version with automatic power selection. This means, that after a change-over to a new energy source the refrigerator can not be operated immediately. When changing from 12 Volt operation to gas operation, the delay is 15 minutes. This prevents a change-over to gas operation when the vehicle is stopped briefly (e.g. stop to fill tank).

Stop to fill tank

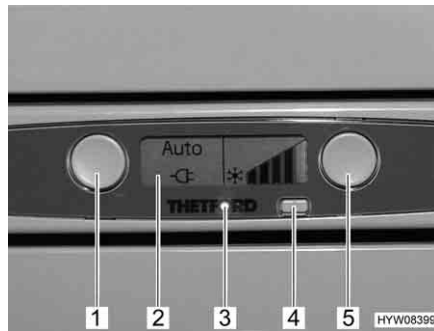


- ▶ Open flames are prohibited at petrol stations.
- If the refrigerator was manually set for gas operation during the journey: switch off the refrigerator in the petrol station area or change over to 12 V operation.
- If the refrigerator was operated in the automatic mode during the journey and the stop for filling the tank takes longer than 15 minutes: switch off the refrigerator. Otherwise, the automatic power selection system will automatically change over to gas operation 15 minutes after stopping the vehicle engine.

Ignition fuse

When selecting gas operation the ignition fuse is opened automatically so gas can get into the burner. At the same time the electronic ignition is activated. If the gas flame is extinguished, e.g. by blast of wind, the ignition is activated immediately and re-ignites the gas.

Operation



- 1 Operating mode button
- 2 Display
- 3 Operating indicator (blue LED)
- 4 On/Off button
- 5 Cooling level button

Fig. 227 Thetford N97 refrigerator



- ▷ If the refrigerator shall be operated with gas: Open the regulator tap on the gas bottle and the gas isolator tap "Refrigerator".

Switching on:

- Press the On/Off button (Fig. 227,4). The operating indicator (Fig. 227,3) lights up in blue. The refrigerator is switched on, the LCD display shows the last settings selected. The display lighting goes out after 10 seconds.

Selecting the energy source:

- Manual power selection: use the Operating mode button (Fig. 227,1) to select the desired energy source. The LCD display shows the selected operating mode. The display goes out after 10 seconds.
- Automatic power selection: use the Operating mode button (Fig. 227,1) to select the AUTO function. The LCD display shows the AUTO function and the current operating mode. The display lighting goes out after 10 seconds.

The automatic power selection is carried out in the following order as a function of the availability of the energy sources:

- 230 V AC
- 12 V DC
- Gas

Setting the refrigerating temperature:

- Set the desired cooling level by pressing the Cooling level button (Fig. 227,5). The LCD display shows the selected cooling power. The display lighting goes out after 10 seconds.

Switching off:

- Press the On/Off button (Fig. 227,4).
- If the refrigerator had been operated with gas: Close the gas isolator tap "Refrigerator" and the main tap on the gas bottle.

Additional functions

If there is a fault present, the operating indicator (Fig. 227,3) next to the On/Off button (Fig. 227,4) will flash. In addition, an error code appears on the display (Fig. 227,2). For instructions on troubleshooting, see chapter 14.



- ▷ Further information can be obtained from the separate instruction manual "Refrigerator".

9.6.5 Refrigerator door locking mechanism

With some models, the refrigerator has a separate freezer compartment. The specifications in this section correspondingly also apply to the door of the freezer compartment.



- ▷ During the journey the refrigerator door must always be closed and locked in the closed position.



- ▷ Lock the refrigerator door in ventilation position when the refrigerator is switched off. This prevents mould forming.

There are two positions for locking the refrigerator door in place:

- Closed refrigerator door during travel and when the refrigerator is in operation
- Slightly opened refrigerator door as a ventilation position when the refrigerator is switched off

Dometic 8 series



Fig. 228 Release button (refrigerator door, Dometic 8 series)

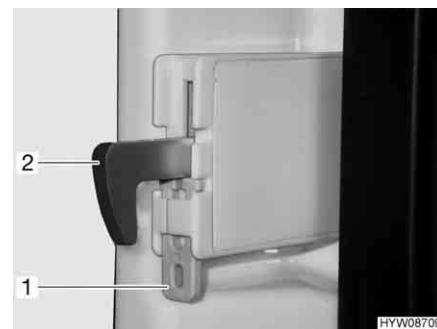


Fig. 229 Fixture (lock hook)

Opening: ■ Press the release button (Fig. 228,1) and open the refrigerator door.

Closing: ■ Close the refrigerator door. The lock hook engages audibly.

When the vehicle has been positioned, the lock hook can be fixed. The refrigerator door can now be opened without having to press the release button.

Fixing the lock hook: ■ Press the fixture (Fig. 229,1) upwards. The lock hook (Fig. 229,2) is pressed upwards and has no function.

Unlocking the lock hook: ■ Push the lock hook (Fig. 229,2) down. The lock hook functions again.

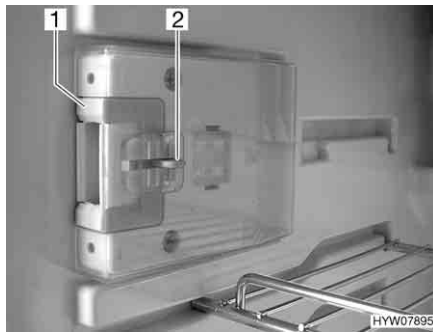


Fig. 230 Locking device (normal position)



Fig. 231 Locking device (ventilation position)

Locking in the ventilation position:

- Open the refrigerator door.
- Press down the unlocking device (Fig. 230,2).
- Push locking device (Fig. 230,1) forwards (Fig. 231).

If the refrigerator door is closed now, a gap will remain between the refrigerator door and the refrigerator.

Dometic 9 series

The refrigerator is opened and closed with the handle (Fig. 232,1) on the door.

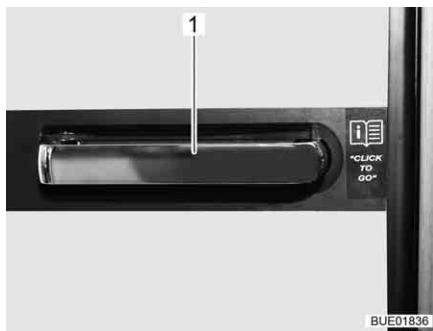


Fig. 232 Refrigerator door handle

Ventilation position

The refrigerator door may be locked in ventilation position with a swivelling bracket.

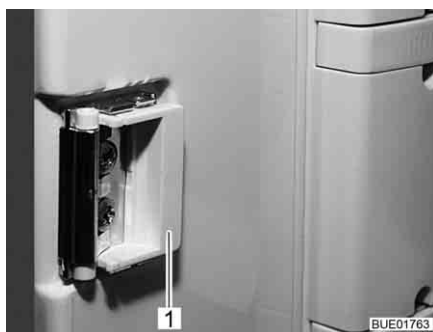


Fig. 233 Locking device in normal position



Fig. 234 Locking device in ventilation position

Locking:

- Open the refrigerator door.
- Swing the bracket (Fig. 233,1) to the front (Fig. 234).

If the refrigerator door is closed now, a gap will remain between the refrigerator door and the refrigerator.

Thetford The refrigerator is opened and closed with the handle on the door.

Opening: ■ Press the handle to the side, keep it pressed and open the refrigerator door.

Closing: ■ Close the refrigerator door. The lock hook engages audibly.

Ventilation position The refrigerator door may be locked in ventilation position with a swivelling bracket.

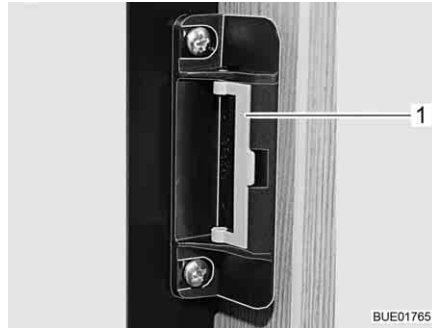


Fig. 235 Locking device in normal position



Fig. 236 Locking device in ventilation position

Locking: ■ Open the refrigerator door.
 ■ Swing the bracket (Fig. 235,1) to the front (Fig. 236).

If the refrigerator door is closed now, a gap will remain between the refrigerator door and the refrigerator.

Chapter overview

This chapter contains instructions regarding the sanitary fittings of the vehicle.

10.1 Water supply, general



- ▶ Fill water tank from supply systems that have been verified to provide drinking water quality.
- ▶ Only use such hoses or containers when filling that have been approved for use with drinking water.
- ▶ Thoroughly rinse filling hose or container with drinking water before use (2 to 3 times capacity).
- ▶ Empty filling hose or container completely after use and close openings of the filling hose or container.
- ▶ Water left standing in the water tank or in the water pipes becomes undrinkable after a short period. Therefore, before each use of the vehicle, thoroughly clean the water pipes and the water tank. After each use of the vehicle completely empty the water tank and the water pipes.
- ▶ In the case of lay-ups lasting more than a week disinfect the water system before using the vehicle (see chapter 11).



- ▷ If the vehicle is not used for several days or if it is not heated when there is a risk of frost, empty the entire water system. Make certain that the water pump is switched off on the panel. Otherwise, the water pump will overheat and may get damaged. Leave the water taps on in central position. Leave the safety/drainage valve (if there is one) and all drain cocks open. Frost damage to appliances, frost damage to the vehicle and deposits in water-carrying components can be avoided in this way.
- ▷ The water pump will overheat without water and can get damaged. Never operate water pump when the water tank is empty.

The vehicle is equipped with a fitted water tank. An electric water pump pumps the water to the individual water taps. Opening a water tap automatically switches on the water pump and pumps water to the tap.

The waste water tank collects the waste water. The water level in the water and waste water tanks can be checked on the panel.



- ▷ Before the water fittings can be used, the 12 V power supply and water pump on the panel must be turned on. Otherwise the water pump will not work.
- ▷ When the water tank is re-filled, an air bubble may form at the bottom of the pump. This air bubble will prevent water from being drawn in. Shake the water pump up and down energetically in the water.

10.2 Water system

10.2.1 Water tank



- ▷ The water tank has a capacity of 110 litres (Travel Van) or 120 litres (other models). In the ready-to-drive state however, the volume has been limited to 20 l (overflow installed) for payload reasons. The panel has not been adjusted to this volume. The level indicator on the panel shows the actual amount of water in the tank.

If necessary or if there is a sufficiently large residual vehicle payload, the water tank can be filled up to its actual capacity. To do this, close overflow. The rotary handle is on the water tank.

10.2.2 Drinking water filler neck

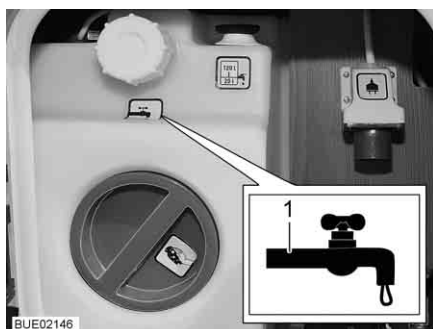


Fig. 237 Cap for the drinking water filler neck (service unit)

The central supply unit (service unit) is installed behind the external flap on the vehicle's left side.

The drinking water filler neck is indicated by the symbol "1" (Fig. 237,1).

10.2.3 Filling the water system



- ▶ When filling the water tank, observe the maximum permissible gross weight of the vehicle. Luggage must be reduced accordingly when the water tank is full.



- ▷ The water pump will overheat without water and can get damaged. Never operate water pump when the water tank is empty.



- ▷ The Truma system (heater/boiler) has a safety/drainage valve and, depending on the model, one or two drain cocks for emptying.
- ▷ Depending on the model, the Alde system (heater/boiler) has one or two drain cocks for emptying.
- ▷ The water quantity can be monitored on the panel while the water tank is filled.

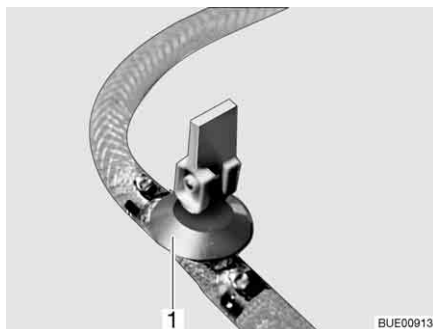


Fig. 238 Drain cock (with rocking lever)

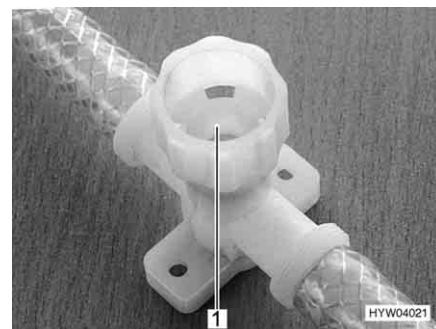


Fig. 239 Drain cock (with twist cap)

- Position the vehicle horizontally.
- Switch on 12 V power supply on the panel.
- If necessary, switch on the water pump on the panel.
- Clean or disinfect water system.
- Close all drain cocks. To do this, position the drain cock's rocking lever (Fig. 238,1) horizontally or turn the drain cock's cap (Fig. 239,1) in a clockwise direction.



Fig. 240 Safety/drainage valve (Truma)

- Close the safety/drainage valve (Truma). Turn the knob (Fig. 240,1) perpendicular to the safety/drainage valve and push the push button (Fig. 240,2) in.
If the temperature is below 6 °C, the safety/drainage valve cannot be closed. Therefore switch on the living area heater and wait until the temperature of the safety/drainage valve exceeds 6 °C.
- Close the drainage opening of the water tank.
- Close all water taps.
- Open the drinking water filler neck on the outside of the vehicle.

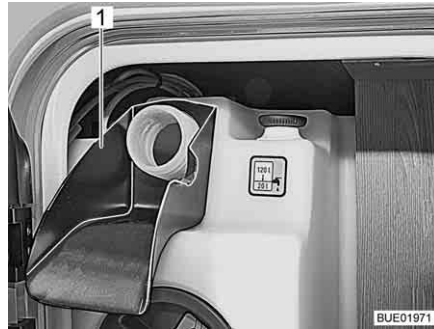


Fig. 241 Filling aid

- Plug the filling aid (Fig. 241,1) onto the drinking water filler neck.
- Fill the water tank with drinking water. Use a water hose, a water canister with a funnel or similar for filling.
- Set all the water taps to "Hot" and open them. The water pump is turned on. The warm water pipes are filled with water.
- Keep the water taps open until the water flowing out of the water taps has no bubbles in it. This is the only way to ensure that the boiler is full of water.
- Set all water taps to "Cold" and leave them open. The cold water pipes will be filled with water
- Keep the water taps open until the water flowing out of the water taps has no bubbles in it.
- Close all water taps.
- Remove filling aid and close drinking water filler neck.
- Check that the cap on the water tank is not leaking.

Position of the drain cocks and safety/drainage valve

See chapter 16.

10.2.4 Topping up the water



- ▶ When filling the water tank, observe the maximum permissible gross weight of the vehicle. Luggage must be reduced accordingly when the water tank is full.

- Open drinking water filler neck.
- Fill the water tank with drinking water. Use a water hose, a water canister with a funnel or similar for filling.
- Close drinking water filler neck.

10.2.5 Closing/opening the overflow



- ▶ When filling the water tank, observe the maximum permissible gross weight of the vehicle. Luggage must be reduced accordingly when the water tank is full.



Fig. 242 Water tank (central supply unit)

- Closing:*
- Turn the rotary handle (Fig. 242,1) on the water tank in a clockwise direction as far as it will go.
 - Fill the water tank with drinking water.
- Opening:*
- Turn the rotary handle (Fig. 242,1) on the water tank in an anticlockwise direction as far as it will go. Excess water will drain away leaving 20 litres in the tank.

10.2.6 Draining water (rotary handle with overflow)



Fig. 243 Water tank (central supply unit)

- Turn the rotary handle (Fig. 243,1) on the water tank in an anticlockwise direction as far as possible beyond the resistance to fully open the drainage opening.

10.2.7 Emptying the water system



- ▷ If the vehicle is not used for several days or if it is not heated when there is a risk of frost, empty the entire water system. Make certain that the water pump is switched off on the panel. Otherwise, the water pump will overheat and may get damaged. Leave the water taps on in central position. Leave the safety/drainage valve (if there is one) and all drain cocks open. Frost damage to appliances, frost damage to the vehicle and deposits in water-carrying components can be avoided in this way.
- ▷ If the water pump can be turned off from the panel, always turn off the water pump from the panel before you empty the water system. Otherwise the water pump runs until it overheats or the battery is empty.



- ▷ The Truma system (heater/boiler) has a safety/drainage valve and, depending on the model, one or two drain cocks for emptying.
- ▷ Depending on the model, the Alde system (heater/boiler) has one or two drain cocks for emptying.

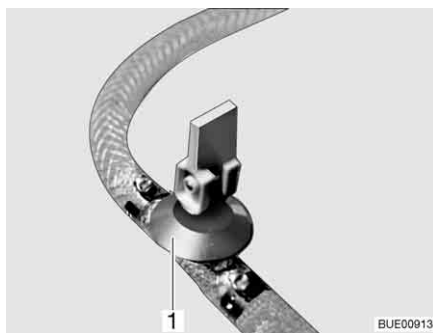


Fig. 244 Drain cock (with rocking lever)

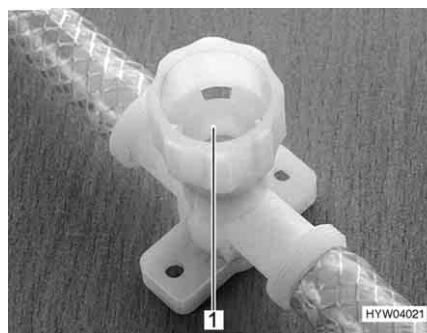


Fig. 245 Drain cock (with twist cap)

To empty and ventilate the water system, proceed as follows. This will avoid frost damage:

- Position the vehicle horizontally.
- Switch off water pump on panel.
- Switch off the 12 V power supply on the panel.
- Shut off the boiler (see section 9.2).
- Open all drain cocks. To do this, position the drain cock's rocking lever (Fig. 244, 1) vertically or turn the drain cock's cap (Fig. 245, 1) in an anti-clockwise direction.

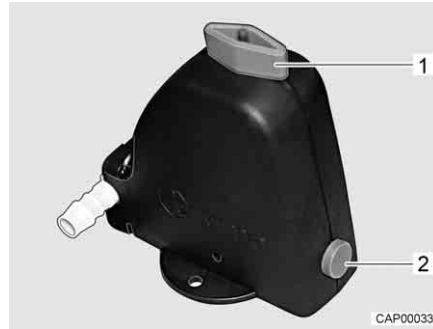


Fig. 246 Safety/drainage valve (Truma)

- Open the safety/drainage valve (Truma). To do this turn the knob (Fig. 246,1) parallel to the safety/drainage valve. The push button (Fig. 246,2) jumps out.
- Open the water tank drain.
- Open all water taps and set to the central position.
- Hang the shower handset up in the shower position.
- Unscrew the lock ring on the water tank.
- Take water pump (fitted to the cover) as far as the connecting lines allow.
- Hold the water pump up until the water pipes are completely empty.
- Check whether the water tank is completely empty.
- Set the shower handset down in the shower tray.
- Blow out the remaining water in the water pipes (max. 0.5 bar). In order to do this, remove the water pipe from the water pump and blow into the water pipe in the direction of the appliances.
- Empty the waste water tank. Take note of the environmental tips in this chapter.
- Empty toilet cassette or sewage tank. Take note of the environmental tips in this chapter.
- Clean the water tank and then rinse it out thoroughly.
- Let the water system dry for as long as possible.
- After emptying, leave all water taps on in the central position.
- Leave all drain cocks open.

**Position of the drain
cocks and safety/
drainage valve**

See chapter 16.

10.3 Waste water installation



- ▷ Never pour boiling water directly into the sink outlet. Boiling water could cause deformation and leaks in the waste water pipe system.



- ▷ Only empty the waste water tank at disposal stations, camping sites or caravan sites especially provided for this purpose.

10.3.1 Draining waste water



- ▷ If there is a risk of frost, empty the waste water tank and leave the drain cock open.



- ▷ If possible, place the vehicle in inclined position to drain the waste water.



Fig. 247 Drain cock symbol



Fig. 248 Drain cock

The waste water tank is in a central position underneath the vehicle.

Waste water from the kitchen and washing unit flows through plastic pipes into the waste water tank.

The drain cock and the cleaning opening are located on the underside of the waste water tank.

The position of the drain cock is identified by a symbol (Fig. 247).

The waste water tank holds 90 litres.

Emptying:

- Park the vehicle such that the drainage opening is positioned above the disposal facility.
- Open the drain cock. To do this, attach the supplied square spanner onto the square of the drain cock (Fig. 248,1).
- To do this, turn the square spanner a quarter turn anticlockwise. The waste water is drained.
- Close the drain cock again once all of the waste water has run out. To do this, turn the square spanner a quarter turn clockwise.
- Remove the square spanner and store it.

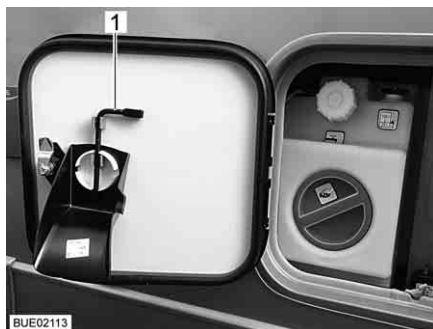


Fig. 249 Service flap with square spanner

If the vehicle is equipped with a service unit, the square spanner (Fig. 249,1) is fastened on the inside of the service flap.

10.3.2 Heater for waste water tank and waste water pipes (special equipment)

In order to prevent waste water fittings freezing up, the waste water tank and the waste water pipes can be electrically heated separately.



- ▷ The heater for the waste water system requires up to 250 W for operation. Therefore, wherever possible, connect the vehicle to a 230 V power supply while the heater for the waste water system is working.

The waste water heating continues to function even if the 12 V power supply is switched off on the panel.

In order to prevent the waste water installation from freezing, depending on the model and the equipment, the following components of the waste water system can be heated electrically:

- Waste water tank
- Waste water pipes
- Waste water tank and drainage

When the respective heater has been switched on, temperature sensors monitor the temperature of the waste water tank and the waste water pipes. If there is a risk of frost, the heating elements are switched on. If the temperature rises above a pre-set value, the heating elements are switched off again.



Fig. 250 Switch for waste water heating

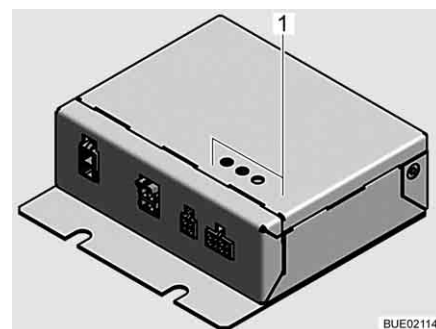


Fig. 251 Control unit for waste water heating

Switching on: ■ Press the upper part of the switch (Fig. 250). The waste water heating is switched on and prevents the heated components from freezing.

Switching off: ■ Press the lower part of the switch.

Three LEDs (Fig. 251,1) indicate the status of the control unit for the waste water heating:

LED HK 1 is lit	Heating circuit 1 is active
LED HK 2 is lit	Heating circuit 2 is active
LED HK 2 is flashing every 16 seconds	The device is in the power saving mode
LED ERR is flashing	The control has detected an error. Contact customer service

10.4 Toilet compartment



- ▷ Do not transport any loads in the shower tray. The shower tray or other items of equipment in the toilet compartment can be damaged.



- ▷ For ventilation purposes during or after a shower, and for drying wet clothing, close the toilet compartment door and open the window or the toilet compartment skylight. This improves the air circulation.
- ▷ Close the shower curtain completely when showering, so that no water is able to enter the area between the wash room wall and the shower tray.
- ▷ After taking a shower, rinse soap residue from the shower tray, otherwise cracks can appear in the shower tray over time.
- ▷ After using the shower, wipe it dry to prevent moisture from collecting.
- ▷ Further information about cleaning the toilet compartment can be found in the section 11.2.

10.5 Toilet



- ▷ If there is any risk of frost and the vehicle is not heated, empty the sewage tank (cassette).
- ▷ Do not sit on the lid of the toilet. The lid is not designed to bear the weight of a person and could break.
- ▷ Use a suitable chemical for this toilet. The ventilation will merely remove the odour but not germs and gases. Germs and gases will have a detrimental effect on the sealing rubbers.
- ▷ Never put the sanitary liquid directly in the toilet bowl.



- ▷ Further information can be obtained in the device manufacturer's instruction manual.



- ▷ Only empty the sewage tank (cassette) at disposal stations, at camping sites or caravan sites, that are especially provided for this purpose.

The flushing of the toilet is fed directly from the water system of the vehicle.

10.5.1 Preparing toilet



- ▷ The sewage tank (cassette) can only be taken out if the sliding trap is closed.



Fig. 252 Flap for sewage tank



Fig. 253 Sewage tank (example)

- Open the flap for the sewage tank on the outside of the vehicle. Insert the key into the locking cylinder of the push-button lock (Fig. 252,1) and turn a quarter turn.
- Remove the key.
- Press both push-button locks (Fig. 252,2) simultaneously with your thumb and open the flap.
- Pull up the retaining clip (Fig. 253,1) and lift the sewage tank (Fig. 253,2) straight up as far as it will go.
- Tilt the sewage tank slightly and remove fully.

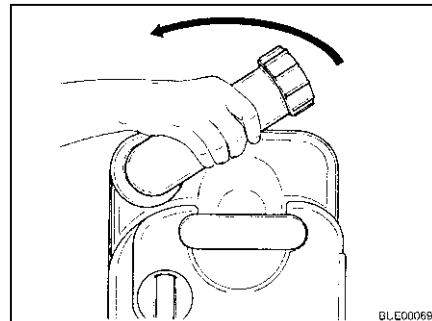


Fig. 254 Turning drainage neck

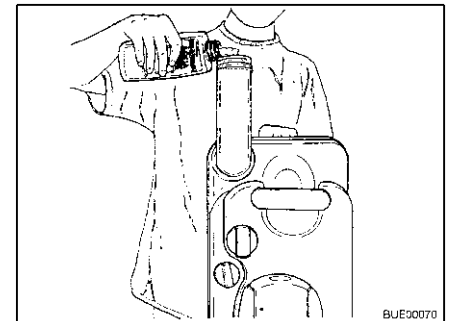


Fig. 255 Filling with sanitary liquid

- Put the sewage tank down vertically.
- Turn the drainage neck upwards (Fig. 254).
- Remove the cap of the drainage neck.
- Fill the stated amount of sanitary liquid into the sewage tank (Fig. 255).
- Then add enough water so that the bottom of the sewage tank is completely covered.
- Close drainage neck with the cap.
- Return the drainage neck to its original position.
- Push the sewage tank back to its original position without applying any force.
- Ensure that the sewage tank is secured by the retaining clip.
- Lock the flap for the sewage tank.

10.5.2 Swivel toilet

The flushing of the Thetford toilet is fed directly from the water system of the vehicle. The toilet bowl can be moved into the optimal position.



Fig. 256 Thetford toilet bowl, swivelling

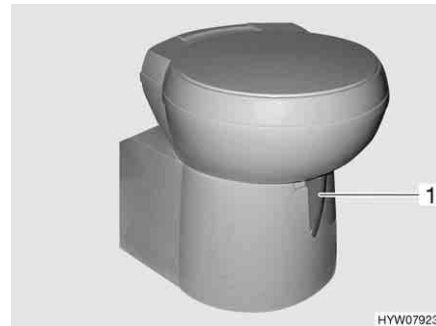


Fig. 257 Thetford toilet bowl, swivelling (alternative)

The operating unit is located close to the toilet bowl.

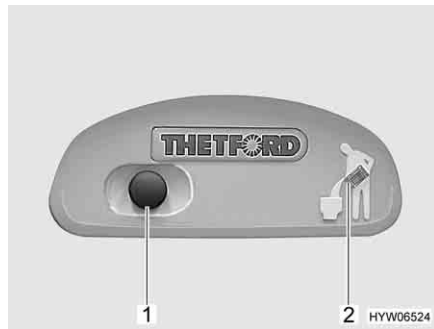


Fig. 258 Flush button/indicator lamp Thetford toilet

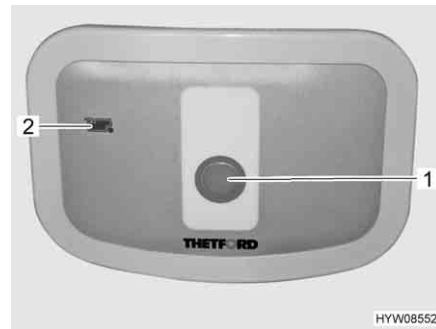


Fig. 259 Flush button/indicator lamp Thetford toilet (alternative)

- Flushing:*
- Before flushing open the sliding trap of the Thetford toilet. To do this, push the slide lever (Fig. 256,1 or Fig. 257,1) in an anticlockwise direction.
 - For flushing, press the blue flush button (Fig. 258,1 or Fig. 259,1).
 - After flushing close the sliding trap. To do this push the slide lever in a clockwise direction.

The indicator lamp (Fig. 258,2 or Fig. 259,2) lights up whenever the sewage tank has to be emptied.

10.5.3 Toilet with fixed seat

The flushing of the toilet is fed from the water system of the vehicle.

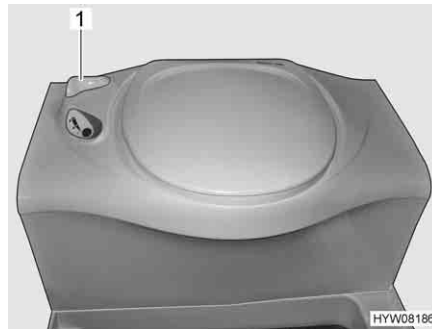


Fig. 260 Thetford toilet

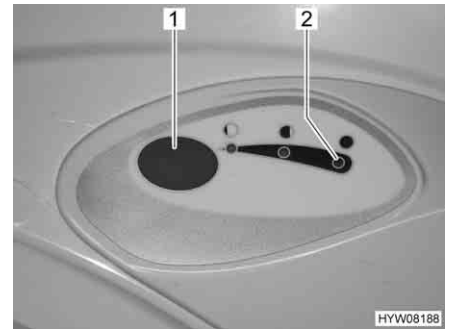


Fig. 261 Flush button/indicator lamp (Thetford toilet)

Flushing:

- Before flushing open the sliding trap of the Thetford toilet. To do this, turn the slide lever (Fig. 260,1) in an anticlockwise direction.
- For flushing, press the blue flush button (Fig. 261,1).
- After flushing close the sliding trap. To do this turn the slide lever (Fig. 260,1) in a clockwise direction.

The indicator lamp (Fig. 261,2) lights up whenever the sewage tank has to be emptied.

10.5.4 Emptying the sewage tank



- ▷ The sewage tank can only be taken out if the sliding trap is closed.



Fig. 262 Flap for the sewage tank



Fig. 263 Sewage tank (example)

- Slide the slide lever on the toilet bowl in a clockwise direction. The sliding trap is closed.
- Open the flap for the sewage tank on the outside of the vehicle. Insert the key into the locking cylinder of the push-button lock (Fig. 262, 1) and turn a quarter turn in a clockwise direction.
- Remove the key.
- Press both push-button locks (Fig. 262, 2) simultaneously with your thumb and open the flap for the sewage tank.
- Pull the retaining clip (Fig. 263, 1) upwards and pull out the sewage tank (Fig. 263, 2).
- Completely empty the sewage tank at disposal stations that are especially provided for this purpose.



- ▷ Actuate the aeration knob on the sewage tank with your thumb to empty it completely.

Chapter overview

This chapter contains instructions regarding the care of the vehicle.

At the end of the chapter there is a checklist of measures you must carry out if you are not going to use the vehicle for an extended period of time.

The checklist address the following topics:

- temporary lay-up
- winter lay-up
- start-up after a lay-up

11.1 External care

11.1.1 General

Standard external care consists of regular washing. The use and the environmental conditions will determine how often the vehicle needs to be washed. Wash the vehicle more frequently in areas which are exposed to heavy air pollution or heavy traffic or roads treated with de-icing salts. If the vehicle is exposed to salty and humid air (coastal areas, humid climates), wash the vehicle more frequently.

Do not park under trees if at all possible. The resin-like discharge which many trees secrete, give the paintwork a matt look and can promote the onset of corrosion.

Wash off bird droppings straight away and thoroughly, as the acid it contains is extremely corrosive.

11.1.2 Washing with a high-pressure cleaner



- ▷ Do not clean the tyres with a high-pressure cleaner. The tyres might be damaged.
- ▷ Do not spray external applications (deco-films) directly with the high-pressure cleaner. The external applications could come off.

Before cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, observe the operating instructions of the high-pressure cleaner.

When cleaning with the nozzle for circular jet between the vehicle and the cleaning nozzle, maintain a minimum distance of approx. 700 mm.

Take into consideration that the jet of water comes out of the cleaning nozzle with pressure. The vehicle may be damaged by incorrect handling of the high-pressure cleaner. The temperature of the water should not be above 60 °C. Keep the jet of water in constant movement during the washing process. Do not direct the water jet at clearances, built-in electrical parts, plugs, seals, the ventilation grill or the skylights. The vehicle may be damaged or water may enter the interior.

11.1.3 Washing the vehicle



- ▷ Never clean the vehicle in the car wash. Water can penetrate the refrigerator grills, the waste gas vent or the forced ventilations. The vehicle could be damaged.
- Wash the vehicle only on a washing site intended for this purpose. Avoid full sunshine. Observe environmental measures.
- Only clean external applications and synthetic parts with plenty of warm water, dish washing liquid and soft cloth.
- Wash down the vehicle with plenty of water, a clean sponge or a soft brush. In the case of stubborn dirt add dish washing liquid to the water.
- Painted exterior walls may also be cleaned with a caravan cleaner.
- Add-on parts made of glass-fibre reinforced plastic (GRP) require a regular follow-up treatment with a polisher. This way these parts will not turn yellow and the sealing of the surface remains intact.
- Rub a conventional rubber care product onto the rubber seals on doors and storage flaps.
- Treat locking cylinder of doors and storage flaps with graphite dust.

11.1.4 Windows of acrylic glass



Acrylic glass windows are delicate and require very careful handling.

- ▷ Never rub acrylic glass windows dry as dust particles might damage the surface!
- ▷ Only clean acrylic glass windows with plenty of warm water, some dish washing liquid and a soft cloth.
- ▷ Never use glass cleaning agents with chemical, abrasive or alcohol-containing additives. Premature brittleness of the panes and associated cracks may result from their use.
- ▷ Avoid contact of cleansing agents used for the body (e.g. tar- or silicone-removing agents) with acrylic glass.
- ▷ Do not clean vehicle in car wash.
- ▷ Do not attach stickers to the acrylic glass windows.
- ▷ Having cleaned the vehicle rinse acrylic glass with sufficient clear water.
- ▷ Treat rubber seals with a conventional rubber care product.



- ▷ An acrylic glass cleanser with antistatic effect is suitable for a follow-up treatment. Small scratches can be treated with an acrylic glass polish. These agents are available at the accessories shop.

11.1.5 Entrance step

If the entrance step is lubricated, coarse particles of dirt can settle on the lubricant during the journey and cause damage to the operating mechanism of the entrance step. Therefore, do not lubricate the moving parts of the entrance step.

11.1.6 Air suspension (Goldschmitt)

- Check periodically whether you can see cracks or brittleness on the bellows.
- Conserve all metal parts of the air suspension system with a protective wax once a year.
- Remove coarse dirt on the bellows manually with a cloth. Approved cleaning agents are e.g. mild soaps, methanol, ethanol and isopropyl alcohol. Cleaning agents such as organic solvents, open flames, scouring agents, and high-pressure cleaners are not permitted.

11.2 Interior care



- ▷ If possible, treat stains immediately.
- ▷ Acrylic glass windows are delicate and require very careful handling (see section 11.1.4).
- ▷ Synthetic parts in the toilet and living area are very delicate and should be treated with care. Do not use solvents, alcohol-containing cleansers or scourers. This procedure will help you to avoid brittleness and formation of cracks.
- ▷ Hair colourants, nail varnish, cigarette ash and similar substances may cause permanent stains or discolouration. For this reason, you should prevent these substances from getting onto plastic parts. If they do get onto plastic parts, you should remove these substances immediately.
- ▷ Do not pour any corrosive agents into the drain holes. Never pour boiling water directly into the drain holes. Corrosive agents and boiling water cause damage to drainage pipes and siphon traps.
- ▷ Do not use vinegar based products to clean the toilet and water system, or for decalcification of the water system. Vinegar-based products may cause damage to seals or parts of the installation. Use standard decalcifying products for decalcification.
- ▷ Save water. Mop up all remaining water.
- ▷ Vacuum off carpets and cushions with a suitable brush attachment.



- ▷ For information about the use of maintenance products, our representatives and service centres will be glad to advise.
- Surface and knobs of furniture, lamps and synthetic parts in the toilet and living area should be cleaned with water and a wool cloth. A mild cleanser may be added to the water. If required, use furniture polish for the painted surfaces.
- Clean upholstery with dry foam specially manufactured for the use on upholstery or with the foam of a mild detergent. Do not wash upholstery. Always have it cleaned. Protect upholstery from direct sunlight so that it does not lose its colour.
- Leather covers should be cleaned with a cotton cloth and a mild soap (curd soap). Make sure that the leather is not soaked through and that no water seeps through the seams of the leather covers.
- Wash panel curtains and gathered blinds. When washing observe washing instructions on the product. The sticks may be removed for washing.
- Vacuum clean the carpet, if necessary clean with carpet shampoo.

- Clean PVC-floor covering with a mild, soapy cleanser for PVC floors. Do not place carpet on wet PVC-floor covering. The carpet and the PVC-floor covering may stick together.
- Clean the sink cover manually using water and washing-up liquid. Do not clean the sink cover in the dishwasher.
- Never clean the sink or the gas cooker with a scourer. Avoid anything which may cause scratching or grooves.
- Clean the burners on the gas cooker using a damp cloth only. Prevent any water from penetrating the burner covers. Water may damage the burners on the gas cooker.
- Brush insect screens on doors, windows and skylights with a soft brush or vacuum with the brush attachment of the vacuum cleaner.
- Brush blinds with a soft brush or vacuum with the brush attachment of the vacuum cleaner. Grease or stubborn dirt may be removed with a mild soap at 30 °C (curd soap).
- Brush Roman shades with a soft brush or vacuum with the brush attachment of the vacuum cleaner. Grease or stubborn dirt may be removed with a mild soap at 30 °C (curd soap).
- Unrolled seat belts can be cleaned with warm soapsuds. The seat belt must be completely dry before being rolled up.

11.2.1 Scratch-resistant surface (kitchen worktop and table top) (special equipment)



- ▷ Do not use any cleaning agents with abrasives.
 - ▷ Do not use any sponges with abrasive material.
 - ▷ Do not use any steel wool.
 - ▷ Do not use any cleaning agents with high acid content.
 - ▷ Do not use any furniture polish nor any cleaning agent based on wax.
- Wipe the surface with a damp cloth.
 - In the case of heavy soiling, wipe the surface with an of-the-shelf cleaner, glass cleaner, dirt eraser, or disinfectant.
 - Remove adhesive, dried up bio-waste, chewing gum with sponge, hot water, and household cleaner.
 - Remove hairspray, cooking oil, wax, ball pen ink, make-up, nail varnish, marker pens (Edding) with a cloth moistened with alcohol or acetone.
 - Remove oil paints with a cloth moistened with paint thinner.
 - For descaling use a cleaning agent that contains no more than 10 % acetic or citric acid.
 - Remove minor scratches with a dirt eraser.
 - Cover deeper scratches with moist kitchen paper. Using an iron set to level II, iron the scratcher in circular motion for no more than 20 seconds. Using a lint-free cloth, rub the scratch in circular motion.

11.3 Water system

11.3.1 Cleaning the waste water tank

Clean the waste water tank after every use.



Fig. 264 Cleaning opening of the waste water tank

- Empty the waste water tank.
- Open the cleaning opening (Fig. 264,1) on the waste water tank and the drain cock.
- Thoroughly rinse out the waste water tank with fresh water.
- If possible, clean waste water sensors through the cleaning opening by hand.

11.3.2 Cleaning the water tank

- Empty the water tank and close the drainage opening.
- Remove the cap of the water tank.
- Fill water tank with water and some washing-up liquid (do not use any scourers).
- Using a trade standard brush for washing dishes, scrub the water tank until there is no longer any visible deposit.
- Scrub also the pump housing.
- If possible, clean fresh water sensors through the cleaning openings by hand.
- Rinse water tank with copious amounts of drinking water.



- ▷ If, due to the design of the water tank, it is not possible to clean the water tank mechanically: Use a suitable chemical cleaning agent.

The authorised dealers would be happy to assist you in choosing a suitable cleaning agent.

Follow the cleaning agent manufacturer's instructions.

11.3.3 Cleaning the water pipes



- ▷ Only use suitable cleaning agents as sold by the specialist trade.
- ▷ The cleaning agent must meet national regulations and be approved (if required).



- ▷ Collect any emerging mixture of water and cleaning agent for correct disposal.

- Empty the water system.
- Close all drainage openings and drain cocks.
- Fill mixture of water and cleaning agent into the water tank. Observe the manufacturer's instructions regarding the mixing ratio.
- Open the drain cocks one by one.
- Leave the drain cocks open until the mixture of water and cleaning agent has reached the respective drain.
- Close the drain cocks.
- Set all the water taps to "Hot" and open them.
- Leave the water taps open until the mixture of water and cleaning agent has reached the drain.
- Set all water taps to "Cold" and open them.
- Leave the water taps open until the mixture of water and cleaning agent has reached the drain.
- Close all water taps.
- Flush the toilet several times.
- Allow the cleaning agent to act in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- Empty the water system. Collect the mixture of water and cleaning agent for correct disposal.
- For rinsing fill the entire water system with drinking water and empty again several times over.

11.3.4 Disinfecting the water system



- ▷ Only use suitable disinfectants as sold by the specialist trade.
- ▷ The disinfectant must meet national regulations and be approved (if required).



- ▷ Collect any emerging mixture of water and disinfectant for correct disposal.

When disinfecting the water system, proceed the same way as when cleaning the water pipes (see section 11.3.3). Simply use disinfectant instead of cleaning agent.

11.4 Extractor hood

A metal grease filter is installed in the extractor hood which must be cleaned occasionally. How often cleaning is necessary depends on how often the extractor hood is used. Do not wait to clean the filter until the performance of the extractor hood has noticeably decreased.

Cleaning the metal grease filter:

- Wash the metal grease filter with warm water and some washing-up liquid.
- Leave the metal grease filter to air dry.

In the recirculating extractor hood, there is an active carbon filter installed additionally. Replace the active carbon filter if necessary (see section 12.5).

11.5 Air conditioning unit

11.5.1 Truma



- ▷ Do not clean the air conditioning unit with a high-pressure cleaner. Water entering can damage the air conditioning unit.
- ▷ Do not clean vehicle in car wash.
- ▷ Do not use any sharp or hard objects when cleaning. Otherwise the air conditioning unit could be damaged.

- Use only water and a gentle cleaning agent to clean the air conditioning unit.
- Wipe the air conditioning unit housing and the air outlet occasionally with a damp cloth.
- Clean the remote control occasionally with a slightly damp cloth. Clean the display with a spectacles cleaning cloth.
- Remove leaves and other dirt from the ventilation openings on the air conditioning unit regularly.
- Check the condensation drain holes regularly to ascertain whether the condensation can run off freely.
- Clean the filters on both sides of the air discharge unit regularly.



- ▷ Further information can be obtained in the manufacturer's instruction manual.

11.5.2 Telair

Every now and then clean the filter and the ventilation grilles on the outside of the housing. How often cleaning is necessary depends on how often the air conditioning unit is used. Do not wait to clean the filter and the ventilation grill until the performance of the air conditioning unit has noticeably decreased.



- ▷ Only use mild cleaning solutions to clean the filter, never use benzene or solvents.

Cleaning the filter:

- Wash the filter with warm water and some washing-up liquid.
- Allow the filter to dry thoroughly before reassembly.

Cleaning the ventilation grill:

- Use a brush to remove coarse dirt or deposits from the external ventilation grilles. If a cleaning solution is used, ensure that no water ingresses into the inside of the housing.

11.6 Winter care

De-icing salt damages the underbody and the parts open to water spray. We recommend that you wash the vehicle more frequently during wintertime. Mechanical and surface treated parts and the underside are under particular strain, and should therefore be cleaned thoroughly.



- ▷ If there is any risk of frost, always run heater at a minimum of 15 °C. Switch the circulation fan (if there is one) to automatic. In the case of extreme external temperatures, the furniture flaps and doors should be left slightly open. The inflowing warm air can help prevent the freezing of water pipes, for example, and counteract the formation of condensation in the storage spaces.
- ▷ If there is any risk of frost, cover the outside surface of the windows with winter insulation mats.
- ▷ Keep waste gas vents and forced ventilations free of snow. Use a vent extension, if necessary.

11.6.1 Preparations

- Check the vehicle for paint and rust damage. Repair damage as necessary.
- Make certain that water cannot penetrate the automatic floor ventilation system and the heater.
- Use a wax-based rust inhibitor to protect the metal parts of the underbody.
- Use appropriate protection for external painted surfaces.

11.6.2 Winter operation

During winter operation, condensation develops when the vehicle is occupied under low-temperature conditions. To ensure good interior air quality and avoid vehicle damage from condensation, sufficient ventilation is essential.

- When heating the vehicle, the heater should be at the highest setting and roof storage cabinets, curtains and blinds should be opened. This ensures optimal ventilation.
- Only heat if the circulation system is switched on.
- In the morning, lift up all cushions, air out storage boxes and dry any damp areas.



- ▷ If condensation has still developed, just wipe it off.
- ▷ It is only possible to guarantee unrestricted operation during winter for models without double floor in connection with the "winter package" from the original equipment.

11.6.3 At the end of the winter season

- Thoroughly clean the underbody of the vehicle and the engine. When this is done, corrosion-inducing anti-freeze agents (salts, alkaline residues) are removed.
- Clean the exterior and use regular car wax to protect metal surfaces.



11.7 Lay-up

11.7.1 Temporary lay-up



- ▶ If the vehicle has been stationary for a long period (approx. 10 months) have the braking and gas systems checked by an authorised specialist workshop.
- ▶ Take into consideration that water is undrinkable after only a short time.
- ▶ Animal damage to cables can lead to short circuits. Fire hazard!

Before laying up the vehicle, go through the following checklist:

	Activities	Done
Base vehicle	Completely fill fuel tank. This prevents corrosion damage within the fuel tank system	
	Jack up vehicle so that the wheels do not bear any load, or move vehicle every 4 weeks. This prevents any pressure points from occurring on tyres and wheel bearings	
	Protect the tyres from direct exposure to the sun. Danger of formation of cracks!	
	Inflate tyres up to the recommended maximum pressure	
	Always provide for sufficient ventilation in the underbody area	
	 ▷ Humidity or lack of oxygen e.g. by covering with plastic film may cause optical irregularities to the underbody.	
	In addition observe the notes in the operating manual of the base vehicle	
Body	All vents should be sealed with the appropriate caps and all other openings (apart from forced ventilations) should also be sealed. This prevents animals (e.g. mice) from gaining entry	
	Air the interior, all storage spaces accessible from the outside, and the parking space (e.g. garage) every 3 weeks in order to prevent the occurrence of condensation and resulting mould formation	
Interior	Place upholstery in an upright position for ventilation, and cover	
	Clean refrigerator	
	Allow refrigerator and freezer compartment doors to remain slightly open	
	Search for traces of animals that have gained entry	
	Disconnect the flat screen from the mains and, if necessary, remove it from the vehicle	
Gas system	Close regulator tap on the gas bottle	
	Close all gas isolator taps	
	Always remove gas bottles from the gas bottle compartment, even if they are empty	
Electrical system	Fully charge living area and starter battery	
	 ▷ Charge the battery for at least 20 hours before laying up.	
	Disconnect the living area battery from the 12 V power supply. To do this, switch off the battery cut-off switch on the transformer/rectifier (see chapter 8)	
Water system	Empty the entire water system. Blow out the residual water from the water pipes (0.5 bar max.). Leave the water taps on in central position. Leave the safety/drainage valve (if there is one) and all drain cocks open. Observe the notes in chapter 10	


11.7.2 Winter lay-up

Additional measures are required if laying up the vehicle over winter:

	Activities	Done
Base vehicle	Clean body and underbody thoroughly and spray with hot wax or protect with varnish	
	Fill fuel tank with winter diesel	
	Check antifreeze in the cooling water	
	Rectify damage to the paintwork	
	Fill in washer fluid with frost protection	
Body	Clean vehicle from outside thoroughly	
	Keep the forced ventilation open	
	Clean and grease installed supports	
	Clean and grease all door and flap hinges	
	Brush oil or glycerine on all locking mechanisms	
	Treat all rubber seals with a conventional rubber care product	
	Use graphite dust to treat locking cylinders	
Interior	Set up the de-humidifier (granulate)	
	Remove cushions and mattresses from the vehicle and store them in a dry place	
	Air the interior every 3 weeks	
	Empty all cabinets and storage compartments, open flaps, doors and drawers	
	Thoroughly clean the interior	
	If there is a risk of frost, do not leave the flat screen in the vehicle	
Electrical system	Remove the starter battery and the living area battery and store them in a place protected from frost (see chapter 8) or connect the vehicle to a 230 V supply	
Water system	Clean the water system using a cleaning agent from a specialised store	
Complete vehicle	Arrange the tarpaulins in such a way that the ventilation openings are not covered, or use porous tarpaulins	

11.7.3 Starting up the vehicle after a temporary lay-up or after lay-up over winter

Go through the following checklist before start-up:

	Activities	Done
Base vehicle	Check the tyre pressure on all tyres	
	Check the tyre pressure of the spare wheel	
Body	Clean the pivot bearing of the entrance step	
	Check the functioning of the fitted supports	
	Check that the doors, windows and skylights are working properly	
	Check that all the external locks are working, such as the storage flaps, the filler neck and the conversion door	
	Remove the cover from the waste gas vent of the heater (if there is one)	
	Remove the winter cover from the refrigerator grills (if there is one)	
Gas system	Put the gas bottles in the gas bottle compartment, tie down and connect to the gas pressure regulator	
Electrical system	Connect to 230 V power supply using the external socket	
	Fully charge living area and starter battery	
	 ▷ Charge the battery for at least 20 hours after lay-up.	
	Connect the living area battery with the 12 V power supply. To do this, switch on the battery cut-off switch on the transformer/rectifier (see chapter 8)	
	Check that the electrical system are working, e.g. interior light, socket and all installed electrical appliances	
Water system	Disinfect water pipes and water tank	
	Check the functionality of the operating lever for the waste water tank	
	Close safety/drainage valve (if there is one), drain cocks and water taps	
	Check water system for leaks	
Appliances	Check the function of the appliances	

Chapter overview

This chapter contains instructions about inspection and maintenance work concerning the vehicle.

At the end of the chapter you will find important instructions on how to obtain spare parts.

12.1 Inspection work

Like any technical appliance, the vehicle must be inspected at regular intervals.

This inspection work must be carried out by qualified personnel.

Special technical knowledge, which cannot be taught within the framework of this instruction manual, is required for these tasks. Personnel possessing this technical knowledge are available for assistance at all our service centres. Their experience and regular technical instruction by the factory as well as equipment and tools guarantee expert and up-to-date inspection of the vehicle.

Have the "First Programmed Inspection" carried out at one of our service centres 12 months after initial registration.

Further inspections should be carried out once a year.

The service centre in charge will confirm the work performed.

Have chassis inspections confirmed in the chassis manufacturer's customer service booklet.



- ▷ Observe the inspections indicated by the manufacturer and have them carried out at the specified intervals. The value of the vehicle is thus preserved.
- ▷ The confirmation of the inspection work carried out serves as valid proof in the event of damage and guarantee claims.

12.2 Maintenance work

As with every machine, this vehicle requires maintenance. The extent and frequency of the maintenance work required depend on conditions of operation and use. More difficult operating conditions make it necessary to service the vehicle more often.

Have the base vehicle and the appliances serviced at the intervals specified in the corresponding instruction manuals.

12.3 Doors

To maintain gliding capability between springs and hinges, grease the conversion door hinges occasionally.



- ▷ We recommend either Molykote PG 65 or Vaseline as lubricants.

12.4 Living area battery

Observe the following to extend battery life:

- Keep the battery surface clean and dry.
- Protect the battery poles and the terminals from corrosion.
- Check the charging condition periodically or use a charge conservation device.
- Always keep stored batteries in charged condition and in a cool place.

12.5 Extractor hood

The active carbon filter in the recirculating extractor hood must be replaced with a conventional active carbon filter if necessary.

- Remove the metal grease filter and clean if necessary.
- Remove the active carbon filter.
- Shake the new active carbon filter if necessary, such that the carbon granules are evenly distributed.
- Insert a new active carbon filter.
- Insert the metal grease filter.

12.6 Alde hot-water heater



- ▷ Check the level of the heating fluid regularly on the compensator reservoir.
- ▷ During or after the first operating hours of the hot-water heater, the filling level may fall below the minimum mark. If this is the case, top up the heating fluid.
- ▷ We recommend to bleed the heating system after the initial heater operation and to check the glycol content.
- ▷ Have heating fluid changed by an authorised dealer or a service centre at intervals of approximately two years as corrosion-protection wears off after some time.
- ▷ Top up heating system with a water-glycol mixture (60 : 40) only. This mixture offers frost protection up to approx. -25 °C. When topping up hot-water heaters that are connected to the engine's cooling circuit, please observe the instructions in the instruction manuals of the manufacturers.



- ▷ Further information can be obtained in the manufacturer's instruction manual.

12.6.1 Checking the fluid level



Fig. 265 Compensator reservoir without panel

- Switch off the hot-water heater and allow it to cool down.
- Check if the fluid level is between the marks "MIN" (Fig. 265,3) and "MAX" (Fig. 265,2) on the compensator reservoir (Fig. 265).

12.6.2 Topping up heating fluid

- Position the vehicle horizontally. This prevents the formation of bubbles.
- Switch off the hot-water heater and allow it to cool down.
- If necessary, unscrew or remove the panel (depending on the model).
- Open the rotary lid (Fig. 265,1) on the compensator reservoir.
- Remove cover.
- Check anti-freeze with an anti-freeze hydrometer. The frost protection content must be 40 % or correspond to a frost protection of -25 °C.
- Fill water frost protection mixture slowly into the compensator reservoir.



- ▷ The optimum fluid level is reached when the fluid in the compensator reservoir is 1 cm above the "MIN" mark when it is cooled down.

12.6.3 Bleeding the heating system



Fig. 266 Bleeding valve of hot-water heater

The bleeding valves are built in nearby the radiators.

- Switch off the hot-water heater and allow it to cool down.
- Open bleeding valve (Fig. 266,1) and leave open until no more air escapes.
- Close bleeding valve.
- Repeat this procedure at all bleeding valves.
- Check to see if the hot-water heater warms up.

12.7 Replacing bulbs, external



- ▶ Bulbs and light fittings can be extremely hot. Therefore, allow lights to cool down before changing bulbs.
- ▶ Store bulbs in a safe place inaccessible to children.
- ▶ Do not use any bulb that has been dropped or which shows scratches in its glass. The bulb might burst.



- ▷ A new bulb should not be touched with the fingers. Use a cloth when installing the new bulb.
- ▷ Use only bulbs of the same type and with the correct wattage (see section 12.7.4 "Types of bulbs for exterior lighting").
- ▷ If LEDs in lights are defect, contact an authorised dealer or service centre.

Types of bulbs

Different types of bulbs are used in the vehicle. Below, we have described how to change the different types of bulbs.

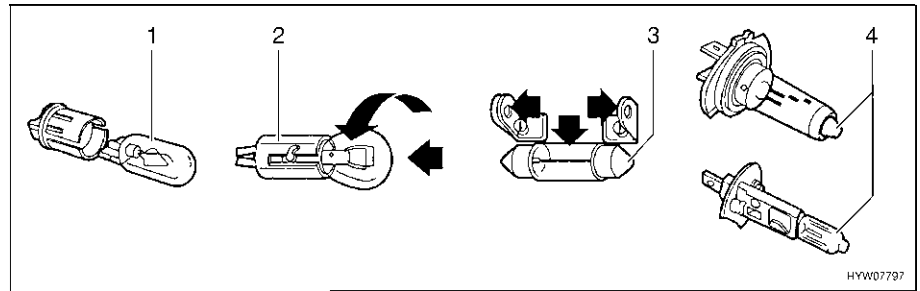


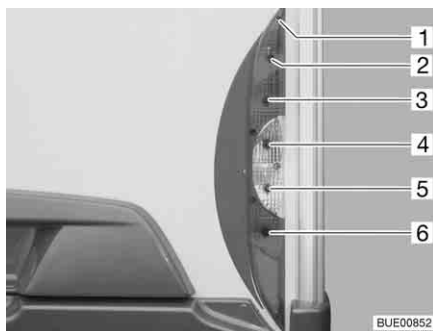
Fig. 267 Types of bulbs

Pos. in Fig. 267	Fixture type/bulb type	Changing
1	Plug-in fixture	To remove, pull out the bulb To mount, push the bulb into the socket with gentle pressure
2	Bayonet socket	To remove, press the bulb down and turn in an anticlockwise direction To insert, place the bulb in the socket and turn in a clockwise direction
3	Cylindrical bulbs	To remove and to insert, carefully bend the contacts of the lamp holder outwards
4	Halogen bulb	To remove, release retaining springs After inserting, hook the retaining springs again

12.7.1 Front lights

The lamps for low beam, main beam and parking light as well as for the direction indicator are part of the basic vehicle. Replacement of light bulbs is described in the instruction manual of the base vehicle.

12.7.2 Rear lights

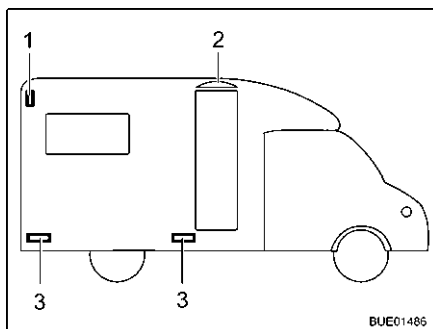


- 1 Housing screws
- 2 Rear light
- 3 Brake light
- 4 Direction indicator
- 5 Reverse light
- 6 Fog tail light

Fig. 268 Rear lights

- Undo the five housing screws (Fig. 268,1).
- Remove housing.
- Remove bulb.
- Put in a new bulb.
- Reassemble the lamp in the reverse order.

12.7.3 Side lights



- 1 Side marker light
- 2 Awning light
- 3 Marker light

Fig. 269 Side lights

Side marker light

The side marker light (Fig. 269,1) is located at the top of the side wall area at the back of the vehicle.

Marker lights

The marker lights (Fig. 269,3) are fitted in the lower part of the vehicle.

Awning light

The awning light (Fig. 269,2) is located above the conversion door.



- ▷ The lights have LEDs. To change the LEDs, contact an authorised dealer or a service centre.

12.7.4 Types of bulbs for exterior lighting

	Exterior lighting	Type of bulb
Rear	Brake light	Ba15s 12 V 21 W
	Rear light	Ba15s 12 V 5 W
	Direction indicator	Ba15s 12 V 21 W orange
	Fog tail light	Ba15s 12 V 21 W
	Licence plate light	Soffitte 12 V 5 W
	Reverse light	Ba15s 12 V 21 W
	Third brake light	LED
Side	Side marker light	LED
	Awning light	LED
	Marker light	LED

12.8 Replacing bulbs, internal



- ▶ Bulbs and light fittings can be extremely hot. Therefore, allow lights to cool down before changing bulbs.
- ▶ Shut off the power supply on the safety cut-out in the 230 V fuse box before changing bulbs.
- ▶ Store bulbs in a safe place inaccessible to children.
- ▶ Do not use any bulb that has been dropped or which shows scratches in its glass. The bulb might burst.
- ▶ Halogen lamps can get very hot. When the light is switched on, there must always be a safety distance of 30 cm between light and flammable objects. Fire hazard!
- ▶ Do not replace the LEDs in lights with standard light bulbs. Risk of fire due to intense heat build up.



- ▷ A new bulb should not be touched with the fingers. Use a cloth when installing the new bulb.
- ▷ Only use bulbs of the same type and with the correct wattage.
- ▷ If LEDs in lights are defect, contact an authorised dealer or service centre.

12.8.1 Spotlight (movable)



Fig. 270 Spotlight (movable)

LED 12 V/max. 10 W

- Changing bulbs:*
- Turn the spotlight (Fig. 270,1) by 90° and remove from rail.
 - Remove LED (Fig. 270,2) with a suction cup.
 - Press a new LED into the holder.
 - Insert spotlight into the rail.

12.8.2 Surface mounted light

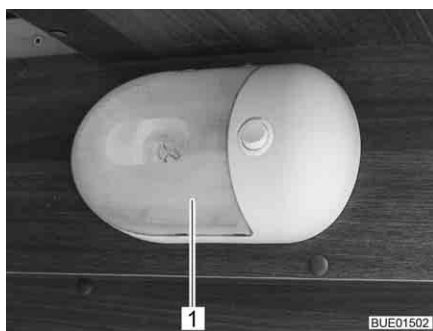


Fig. 271 Surface mounted light

12 V/16 W halogen bulb

- Changing bulbs:*
- Carefully push the transparent cover (Fig. 271,1) together from both sides, pull it lightly from the switch and pull it off forwards.
 - Remove halogen bulb.
 - Put in a new halogen bulb.
 - Reassemble the lamp in the reverse order.

12.9 Spare parts



- ▶ Every alteration of the original condition of the vehicle can alter road behaviour and jeopardize road safety.
- ▶ The special equipment and original spare parts recommended by us have been specially developed and supplied for your vehicle. These products are available at the authorised dealer or service centre. The authorised dealer or service centre is informed about admissible technical details and carries out the required work correctly.
- ▶ The use of accessories, parts and fittings not supplied by us may cause damage to the vehicle and jeopardize road safety. Even if an expert's report, a general type approval or a design certification exists, there is no guarantee for the proper quality of the product.
- ▶ No liability can be assumed for damage caused by products which have not been released by us. This also applies to impermissible alterations to the vehicle.

For safety reasons, spare parts for pieces of equipment must correspond with manufacturer's instructions and be permitted by the manufacturer as a spare part. These spare parts may only be fitted by the manufacturer or an authorised specialist workshop. The authorised dealers and service centres are available for any spare parts requirement.

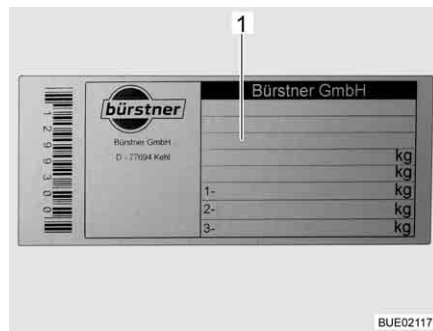
Here are some suggestions of important spare parts:

- Fuses
- V-belt
- Windscreen blades
- Bulbs
- Water pump (submerged pump)

When ordering spare parts please indicate the chassis number and the vehicle type to the dealer.

The vehicle described in this instruction manual is built and equipped to factory standards. Special equipment is offered depending on its purpose or use. When fitting special equipment check if such equipment has to be entered in the vehicle documents. Observe the max. permissible gross weight. The authorised dealer or service centre will be happy to advise you.

12.10 Vehicle identification plate



1 Chassis number

Fig. 272 Vehicle identification plate

The vehicle identification plate (Fig. 272) with the chassis number is located inside in the entrance area.

Do not remove the vehicle identification plate. The vehicle identification plate:

- Identifies the vehicle
- Helps with the procurement of spare parts
- Together with the vehicle documents identifies the vehicle owner



- ▷ Always include the **chassis number** with all inquiries for the customer service office.

12.11 Warning and information stickers

There are warning and information stickers on and inside the vehicle. Warning and information stickers are for the sake of safety and must not be removed.



- ▷ Replacement stickers can be obtained from an authorised dealer or a service centre.

Chapter overview

This chapter contains instructions regarding the tyres of the vehicle.

At the end of the chapter there is a table you can use to find the correct tyre pressure for your vehicle.

13.1 General



- ▶ Check tyre pressure before a journey or every 2 weeks. Wrong tyre pressure causes excessive wear and can lead to damage or even to tyre burst. You can lose control of the vehicle (see section 13.7).



- ▷ Check the tyre pressure on cold tyres. Do not reduce the higher tyre pressure when the tyres are warm.
- ▷ Tubeless tyres have been installed on the vehicle. Never install tubes in these tyres.
- ▷ Read the instruction manual for the base vehicle.



- ▷ Depending on the model, the vehicle may only be equipped with a tyre repair kit as standard.
- ▷ In the case of a puncture, pull the vehicle over to the side of the road. Make vehicle safe with a hazard warning triangle. Switch on the warning lights.
- ▷ Tyres on vehicles with tandem axles may wear faster.
- ▷ Tyres should not be older than 6 years because the material will become brittle over time. Have the tyres inspected after 6 years. The four-digit DOT number on the tyre flank indicates the date of manufacture. The first two digits designate the week, the last two digits the year of manufacture.

Example: (3517) Week 35, year of manufacture 2017.

Observe:

- Check the tyres regularly (every 2 weeks) for equal tread wear, tread depth and external damage.
- Replace tyres at the latest, when the minimum depth of tread stipulated by law is reached.
- We recommend always using tyres of the same model, same brand and same version (summer and winter tyres).
- Only use tyres approved for the wheel rim type fitted. The permitted rim and tyre sizes are quoted in the vehicle documents and the authorised dealer or service centre will always be glad to give you advice.
- Run-in new tyres for approx. 100 km (60 miles) at low speed since only then do they reach full strength.

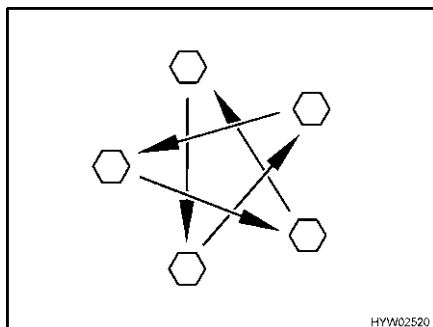


Fig. 273 Tighten the wheel nuts or wheel bolts cross-wise

- Check regularly that the wheel nuts or wheel bolts are firmly seated. Re-tighten the wheel nuts or wheel bolts of a changed wheel after 50 km (30 miles) (Fig. 273). See section 13.5.2 for tightening torque.
- When using new or newly painted wheel rims, re-tighten the wheel nuts or wheel bolts once again after approx. 1,000 to 5,000 km (600 miles to 3,000 miles) (Fig. 273).
- For lay-ups or long periods of inactivity of the vehicle, keep the tyres and tyre bearings free from pressure points: Jack up the vehicle so that the wheels do not bear any load, or move the vehicle every 4 weeks in such a way that the position of the wheels is changed.

13.2 Tyre selection



- ▶ A wrong tyre can damage the tyres during the journey and even cause it to burst.



- ▷ If tyres that are not approved for the vehicle are used, then the type approval for the vehicle and subsequently the insurance coverage can lapse. The authorised dealer or service centre will be happy to advise you.

The tyre sizes approved for the vehicle are given in the vehicle documents or can be obtained from the authorised dealers or service centres. Each tyre must fit the vehicle on which it will be driven. This applies to the external dimensions (diameter, width), which are indicated with the standardised size designations. In addition, the tyres must meet the requirements of the vehicle with regard to weight and speed.

Weight refers to the maximum permissible axle load which can be distributed on two tyres. The maximum load-carrying capacity of a tyre is indicated by its load index (= LI, load index code).

The axle geometry of a vehicle, such as wheel camber and track, is also important for tyre selection. The maximum permissible speed for a tyre (with full load-carrying capacity) is indicated by the speed index (= SI). Together, load index and speed index form the operating code of a tyre. This is an official component of the complete, standardised dimensions description which appears on every tyre. The information on the tyres must correspond to the specifications which appear in the vehicle papers.

13.3 Tyre specifications

215/70 R 15C 109/107 Q
(example)

Description	Explanation
215	Tyre width in mm
70	Height-to-width proportion in percent
R	Tyre design (R = radial)
15	Rim diameter in inches
C	Commercial (transporter)
109	Load index code for single tyres
107	Load index code for twin tyres
Q	Speed index (Q = 160 km/h)

13.4 Handling of tyres

- Drive over kerbs at an obtuse angle. Otherwise the flanks of the tyres may get pinched. Driving over a kerb at a sharp angle can damage the tyre and result in it getting ruptured.
- Drive over high manhole covers at a slow speed. Otherwise the tyres may get pinched. Driving over a high manhole cover at high speed can damage the tyre and result in it getting ruptured.
- Check the shock absorbers regularly. Driving with poor shock absorbers significantly increases wear.
- If the tread wear is uneven, have the toe-in and the wheel camber checked. Driving with an incorrectly set toe-in or a one-sided wheel camber leads to a significant increase in wear.
- Do not clean the tyres with a high-pressure cleaner. The tyres can suffer serious damage within just a few seconds and rupture as a result.
- Drive in such a way as to protect your tyres. Avoid braking sharply, revving up too strongly and long journeys on poor roads.

13.5 Changing wheels

13.5.1 General instructions



- ▶ The vehicle must be on level, firm ground, secure from slipping.
- ▶ Go into first gear. In the case of automatic transmission, change gear to "P" position.
- ▶ Before jacking up the vehicle firmly apply the handbrake.
- ▶ Prevent the vehicle from rolling away by blocking the opposite wheel with the wheel chocks.
- ▶ Under no circumstances jack the vehicle with the fitted supports.
- ▶ If a trailer is connected: Detach the trailer before lifting the vehicle.
- ▶ Position the vehicle jack underneath the axle, not under any circumstances on the bodywork.
- ▶ Never overload the vehicle jack. The maximum permissible load is specified on the vehicle jack's identification plate.
- ▶ Use the vehicle jack only for lifting the vehicle briefly while changing the tyre.
- ▶ No persons may be in the vehicle while it is raised.
- ▶ Do not start the motor while the vehicle is jacked up.
- ▶ Whilst the vehicle is in a jacked up position, persons must not lie down under it.



- ▷ Do not damage the thread of the thread bolt or wheel bolt when changing the wheel.
- ▷ Tighten the wheel nuts or wheel bolts cross-wise (Fig. 273).
- ▷ When changing wheels (e.g. alloy wheel rims or wheels with winter tyres), use the correct wheel bolts of the correct length and shape. Otherwise the wheels may not be securely fixed or the braking system may not work correctly.
- ▷ The use of wheel rims or tyres that are not approved for the vehicle can make it less than fully roadworthy; such wheel rims or tyres must be separately inspected and approved by an accredited test centre.
- ▷ Do not replace wheels cross-wise.



- ▷ Protect the vehicle according to the national regulations, e.g. with a hazard warning triangle.
- ▷ Before changing the wheel, check the wheel rim and tyre size, the max. tyre load and the speed index on the tyres. Only use the wheel rim and tyre sizes stated in the vehicle documents.
- ▷ Further information can be found in the instruction manual of the base vehicle.

13.5.2 Tightening torque

Depending on the wheel rim type and the wheel manufacturer, the wheels must be tightened with different tightening torques.

Steel wheel rims

Description	Tightening torque
15"	160 Nm
16" Fiat/Citroen Light	160 Nm
16" Fiat/Citroen Heavy	180 Nm



Fig. 274 Steel wheel rim (standard)

Alloy wheel rims

Description	Tightening torque
15" Irmischer IC-Line	180 Nm
16" Irmischer IC-Line	180 Nm
16" Fiat/Citroen Light	160 Nm
16" Fiat/Citroen Heavy	180 Nm



Fig. 275 Irmischer IC-Line



Fig. 276 Citroen



Fig. 277 Fiat Light



Fig. 278 Fiat Heavy

13.5.3 Changing a wheel



- ▶ The footplate of the vehicle jack must be levelly positioned on the ground.
- ▶ Do not tilt the vehicle jack.



- ▷ The wheel you have replaced should be repaired immediately.
- ▷ Take note of the general instructions in this chapter.



Fig. 279 Securing vehicle

- Park the vehicle on as even and stable a surface as possible.
- Switch off the engine and safeguard the area.
- Engage first gear or reverse gear.
- Apply the handbrake.
- Place wheel chocks or other appropriate objects beneath the opposite wheel of the vehicle to secure it (Fig. 279).
- Remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel support.
- If the ground is soft, place a stable support such as a wooden board beneath the vehicle jack.
- Apply the vehicle jack to the designated mounting points (refer to the instruction manual for the base vehicle).
- Using the wheel brace, turn the wheel bolts several times to loosen them, but do not remove them.
- Lift the vehicle until the wheel has been lifted 2 to 3 cm above the ground.
- Remove the wheel bolts and take off the wheel.
- Place the spare wheel on the wheel hub and adjust.
- Screw in the wheel bolts and slightly tighten them cross-wise.
- Crank down the vehicle jack and remove it.
- Using the wheel brace, tighten the wheel bolts evenly (see section 13.5.2 for tightening torque).
- Have the tightening torque checked by an authorised specialist workshop.

13.6 Spare wheel support (special equipment)

The spare wheel support is built into the rear garage.

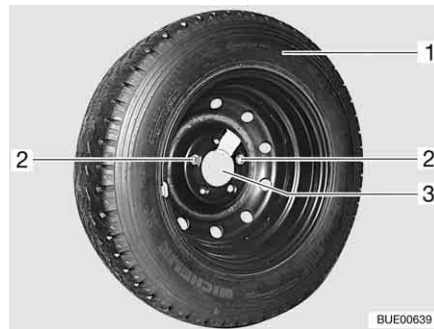


Fig. 280 Spare wheel support in the rear garage

Removing the spare wheel:

- Open external flap of the rear garage.
- Loosen and remove both fixing screws (Fig. 280,2) with the on-board tool set.
- Remove the spare wheel (Fig. 280,1) from the support (Fig. 280,3).

13.7 Tyre pressure



- ▶ Tyres overheat if the tyre pressure is too low. This can cause serious tyre damage.
- ▶ Check tyre pressure before a journey or every 2 weeks. Wrong tyre pressure causes excessive wear and can lead to damage or even to tyre burst. You can lose control of the vehicle.
- ▶ Use only valves that are approved for the specified tyre pressure.

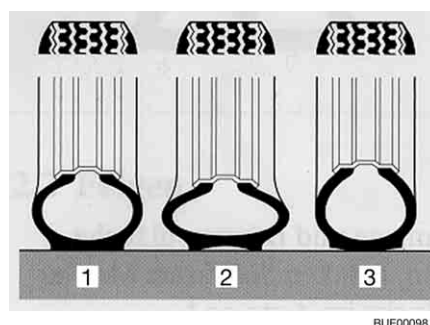


- ▷ Check the tyre pressure on cold tyres. Do not reduce the higher tyre pressure when the tyres are warm.

The payload and the durability of tyres is directly dependent on the tyre pressure. Air is a volatile medium. It is unavoidable that it will escape from tyres.

As a rule of thumb it can be assumed that a filled tyre loses pressure at a rate of 0.1 bar every two months. To prevent the tyres becoming damaged or burst, check the tyre pressure regularly.

The contact surface of the tyre changes, depending on the tyre pressure.



- 1 Correct tyre pressure
- 2 Tyre pressure too low
- 3 Tyre pressure too high

Fig. 281 Contact surface of the tyre



- ▷ The information on pressure levels is valid for cold tyres and loaded vehicles.
- ▷ Pressure in hot tyres must be 0.3 bar higher than in cold tyres. Recheck the pressure when the tyres are cold.
- ▷ Tyre pressures in bar.
- ▷ The tyre pressure tolerance is +/- 0.05 bar.

Types	Tyre size	Front air pressure in bar	Rear air pressure in bar
All types	215/70 R 15 C (109/107) Q	4.1	4.5
All types with motorhome tyres	215/70 R 15 CP (109/107) Q	5.0	5.5
All types with winter tyres (M+S)	215/70 R 15 C (109/107) Q or 215/70 R 15 CP (109/107) Q	4.3	4.75
All types	225/70 R 15 C (109/107) Q	4.1	4.5
All types with motorhome tyres	225/70 R 15 CP (109/107) Q	5.0	5.5
All types with winter tyres (M+S)	225/70 R 15 C (109/107) Q or 225/70 R 15 CP (109/107) Q	4.3	4.75
All types	225/75 R 16 C (116/114) Q	4.5	5.0
All types with motorhome tyres	225/75 R 16 CP (116/114) Q	5.5	5.5
All types with winter tyres (M+S)	225/75 R 16 C (116/114) Q or 225/75 R 16 CP (116/114) Q	5.2	5.2
All types	225/75 R 16 C (116/114) Q (tandem axle)	4.5	3.8
All types with motorhome tyres	225/75 R 16 CP (116/114) Q (tandem axle)	5.5	3.8
All types with winter tyres (M+S)	225/75 R 16 C (116/114) Q (tandem axle) or 225/75 R 16 CP (116/114) Q (tandem axle)	5.2	3.8

The vehicles are constantly brought up to the newest technical standards. It is possible that new tyre sizes are not yet included in this table. If this is the case, any authorised dealer or service centre will be happy to provide the newest values.

Chapter overview

This chapter contains instructions about possible faults in your vehicle. The faults are listed with their possible causes and corresponding remedies. The specified faults can be remedied with relative ease and without a great deal of specialised knowledge. In the event that the remedies detailed in this instruction manual should not be successful, an authorised specialist workshop must find and eliminate the cause of the fault.

14.1 Air suspension (Goldschmitt)

Fault	Cause	Remedy
Lifting the vehicle does not work	Damaged bellow	Contact customer service; onward journey possible to a limited extent at 60 km/h

14.2 Braking system



- ▶ Have defects on the braking system immediately remedied by an authorised specialist workshop.

14.3 Satellite unit

Fault	Cause	Remedy
No signal during search for satellites	No satellite found	Make sure that, towards the south, there are no obstacles in front of the satellite unit
		Make sure that the location is within the reception range of the satellite
		Make sure that the connecting cable of the signal converter (LNB) is fastened correctly on the antenna
		Make sure that all cables on the advance unit are connected correctly
Black screen	Receiver or TV set are not switched on	Switch the receiver and the TV set on
	Wrong satellite selected	Make sure that the correct satellite has been selected

Fault	Cause	Remedy
The satellite unit cannot be switched on	The vehicle engine is running	Switch the vehicle engine off
	Remote control battery is empty	Change the battery
	Fuse on the supply cable is damaged	Replace fuse

Further faults can occur, which are shown by an error code on the display of the operating panel. For information on this, see the manufacturer's indications.

14.4 Electrical system




- ▷ When the living area battery is changed, only use batteries of the same type and the same capacity.



- ▷ See chapter 8 for changing the fuses.

Fault	Cause	Remedy
Road light system does no longer work correctly	Bulb is defective	Replace bulb. Note volts and watts specifications
Interior lighting does no longer work correctly	Bulb is defective	Replace bulb. Note volts and watts specifications
	Plug connector or cable defective	Contact customer service
	Fuse on the transformer/rectifier is defective	Replace fuse on the transformer/rectifier
The electrically operated entrance step cannot be moved in or out	Fuse on the transformer/rectifier is defective	Replace fuse on the transformer/rectifier
230 V indicator lamp does not light up, although 230 V mains power supply is connected	The mains connection is de-energised	Check mains connection (e.g. campsite)
No 230 V power supply despite connection	230 V automatic circuit breaker has triggered	Switch on the 230 V automatic circuit breaker
Starter or living area battery is not charged when operated in 230 V mode	Jumbo flat fuse (50 A) on the starter or living area battery is defective	Replace jumbo flat fuse (50 A) on the starter or living area battery
	Charger module in the transformer/rectifier is defective	Contact customer service
Living area battery is not charged during vehicle operation	Fuse on terminal D+ of the alternator is defective	Replace fuse
	Disconnecter relay in the transformer/rectifier is defective	Contact customer service

Fault	Cause	Remedy
Living area battery overloaded ("hot")	Battery selection switch set wrongly	Move position of battery selection switch
	Defective load sensor or relay	Contact customer service
12 V power supply does not work	12 V power supply is switched off	Switch 12 V power supply on
	Battery cut-off switch on the transformer/rectifier is switched off	Set battery cut-off switch to on
	Living area battery is discharged	Charge the living area battery
	Jumbo flat fuse (50 A) on the living area battery is defective	Replace jumbo flat fuse (50 A) on the living area battery
	Disconnecter relay in the transformer/rectifier is defective	Contact customer service
	12 V power supply does not work in 230 V operation	12 V power supply is switched off
12 V power supply does not work in 230 V operation	Battery cut-off switch on the transformer/rectifier is switched off	Set battery cut-off switch to on
	Charger module in the transformer/rectifier is defective	Contact customer service
	230 V automatic circuit breaker has triggered	Contact customer service
	Jumbo flat fuse (50 A) on the living area battery is defective	Replace jumbo flat fuse (50 A) on the living area battery
Starter battery is discharged in 12 V operation	Disconnecter relay in the transformer/rectifier is defective	Contact customer service
	Battery cut-off switch on the transformer/rectifier is switched off	Set battery cut-off switch to on
No voltage is supplied by the living area battery	Living area battery is discharged	<p>Charge living area battery immediately</p> <p> ▷ Total discharge damages the battery.</p> <p>If the vehicle is to be laid up for a long period, fully charge the living area battery beforehand</p> <p>Discharging is caused by inactive appliances (see chapter 8)</p>

Fault	Cause	Remedy
12 V indicator lamp does not light up	12 V power supply is switched off	Switch 12 V power supply on
	Battery cut-off switch on the transformer/rectifier is switched off	Set battery cut-off switch to on
	Starter or living area battery is not charged	Charge the starter or living area battery
	Disconnecter relay in the transformer/rectifier is defective	Contact customer service
	Flat fuse (2 A) in the living area battery is defective	Replace flat fuse (2 A) in the living area battery
Extractor hood does not work	230 V automatic circuit breaker is switched off	Switch on the 230 V automatic circuit breaker
	Fuse (15 A) at the transformer/rectifier is defective	Replace fuse (15 A)
	Extractor hood is defective	Contact customer service

14.5 Gas system



- ▶ In case of a defect of the gas system (gas odour, high gas consumption) there is danger of explosion! Close regulator tap on the gas bottle immediately. Open doors and windows and ventilate well.
- ▶ If the gas system is defective: Do not smoke; do not ignite any open flames, and do not operate electric switches (light switches etc.). Check the tightness of gas-conducting parts and lines with leakage search spray. Do not check with an open flame.
- ▶ Have the defective gas system repaired by an authorised specialist workshop.

Fault	Cause	Remedy
No gas	Gas bottle is empty	Change gas bottle
	Gas isolator tap closed	Open the gas isolator tap
	Regulator tap on the gas bottle is closed	Open regulator tap on the gas bottle
	External temperature is too low (-42 °C for propane gas, 0 °C for butane gas)	Wait for higher external temperatures
	Built-in appliance is defective	Contact customer service

14.6 Heater/boiler

In the event of a defect contact the nearest customer service workshop of the relevant appliance manufacturer. The list of addresses is enclosed with the accompanying appliance documentation. Only authorised qualified personnel may repair the appliance.

14.6.1 Truma heater/boiler with CP plus digital operating unit

Fault	Cause	Remedy
Heater does not ignite	Temperature sensor on operating unit or remote sensor defective	Pull out plug on operating unit. The heater then works without thermostat. Contact the customer service as soon as possible
No display on the operating unit	Fuse on the transformer/rectifier is defective	Replace fuse on the transformer/rectifier
	Fuse in the electronic control unit has been triggered	Contact customer service
	Living area battery defective	Charge or replace the living area battery (or have it charged or replaced)
Fault with error code is displayed	See table "Fault search instruction"	See table "Fault search instruction"
Boiler empties, safety/drainage valve has opened	Internal temperature below 8 °C	Heat inside
Safety/drainage valve cannot be closed	Temperature at safety/drainage valve below 8 °C	Heat inside
Fan wheel runs noisily or not steadily	Fan wheel is soiled	Contact Truma service department

**Fault search
instruction**

Error code	Cause	Rectification
# 17	Summer operation with empty water container	Switch off the device and allow it to cool down. Fill the boiler with water
	Warm air louvres blocked	Check outlet openings
	Air circulation suction system blocked	Remove blocking of air circulation suction system
# 18	Gas pressure regulator iced up	Use regulator heater (defroster if available)
	Proportion of butane gas in gas bottle too high	Use propane gas (butane gas is unsuitable for heating especially for temperatures under 10 °C)
# 21	Room temperature sensor or cable defective	Contact customer service
# 24	Risk of undervoltage Battery voltage too low < 10.4 V	Charge the battery
# 29	Short circuit in heating element for frost control	Remove plug of heating element on electronic control unit. Replace heating element
# 41	Electronics blocked	Contact customer service
# 42	Safety switch has triggered	(Not used here)
# 43	Overvoltage > 16.4 V	Check battery voltage and voltage sources (e.g. charging unit)
# 44	Undervoltage Battery voltage too low < 10.0 V	Charge battery. Replace outdated battery if required
# 45	No 230 V power supply	Check external mains connection
	230 V automatic circuit breaker has triggered	Switch on the 230 V automatic circuit breaker
	Overheating protection has triggered	Reset overheating protection. Allow heater to cool, remove connection cover and press reset button
#112, #202, #121, #211	Lack of gas	Open regulator tap and gas isolator tap
		Connect a full gas bottle
#122, #212	Combustion air inlet or exhaust gas outlet closed	Check openings for dirt (slush, ice, leaves etc.) and clean if necessary
#255	No connection between heater and operating unit	Contact customer service
	Cable defective	Contact customer service

14.6.2 Alde heater/boiler


▷ If a fault occurs in the system, the cause is shown on the display.

Fault	Cause	Remedy
Heater does not ignite with gas operation	Lack of gas	Open regulator tap and gas isolator tap Connect a full gas bottle
Heater does not ignite	Battery voltage too low	Charge battery. If the battery voltage rises above 11 V, the heater is switched on automatically
Heater does not ignite at 230 V electrical operation	No 230 V power supply	Switch on the 230 V automatic circuit breaker Connect the 230 V power supply
Heater switches off	Overheating	Allow the heater to cool. To reset the display, interrupt the 12 V power supply to the heater and switch it back on again
Heater running, but no heat at the convectors	Circulating pump does not work	Switch on room thermostat Contact customer service
Heater and circulating pump running, but no heat at the convectors	Air in the heating system	Bleed hot-water heater

14.7 Air conditioning unit

14.7.1 Truma

Fault	Cause	Remedy
Air conditioning unit does not start up	No 230 V power supply	Connect the vehicle to the local power supply
	230 V automatic circuit breaker has triggered	Switch on the 230 V automatic circuit breaker
Remote control is not working	Remote control batteries empty	Change remote control batteries
Air conditioning unit does not respond to remote control commands	Obstacle between remote control and IR receiver	Remove obstacle
Air conditioning unit does not cool	Temperature has been set incorrectly	Adjust the temperature
	Thermostat defective	Contact customer service
	Defrosting process is running (external temperature between 4 °C and 7 °C)	Wait until defrosting process is finished
Air conditioning unit does not warm up	External temperature below 4 °C	Heating mode not possible
	Temperature has been set incorrectly	Adjust the temperature
	Thermostat defective	Contact customer service
	Filter dirty	Change filter
	Air passages are soiled/obstructed	Clean/clear air passages
	Defrosting process is running (external temperature between 4 °C and 7 °C)	Wait until defrosting process is finished
Water is entering the vehicle	Drainage holes for condensation are clogged	Clean air conditioning unit
	Seal is defective	Contact customer service
	Inclined position	Do not drive on gradients or inclines greater than 8 %
No more air circulation	Air filter clogged	Clean air filter
	Fan wheel defective	Contact customer service

14.7.2 Telair

Fault	Cause	Remedy
Air conditioning unit does not start up	No 230 V power supply	Connect 230 V power supply
	230 V automatic circuit breaker has triggered	Switch on the 230 V automatic circuit breaker
	Remote control batteries empty	Change batteries (2 x AAA)
Air conditioning unit does not cool	Room temperature is lower than the preset temperature	Reset temperature
Air conditioning unit does not heat	Room temperature is higher than the preset temperature	Reset temperature
Insufficient ventilation rating	Ventilation flaps closed	Open at least one ventilation flap
	Filter dirty	Clean the filter
Water is entering the vehicle	Drainage holes for condensation are clogged	Clean air conditioning unit

14.8 Cooker
14.8.1 Gas cooker/gas oven

Fault	Cause	Remedy
Ignition fuse does not operate (flame does not burn after the control knobs are released)	Heat-up time is too short	Keep control knob pressed for approx. 15 to 20 seconds after ignition
	Ignition fuse is defective	Contact customer service
Flame extinguishes when being reduced to its minimum setting	Thermocouple sensor is incorrectly set	Correctly reset thermocouple sensor (do not bend). The sensor tip should protrude by 5 mm beyond the burner. The sensor neck should not be more than 3 mm away from the burner ring; if necessary, contact customer service

14.8.2 Microwave oven



► Only qualified personnel may repair the microwave oven. Improper repairs can cause major risks to the user.

Fault	Cause	Remedy
Microwave oven does not cut in	Fuse is defective	Replace fuse
	Door of the microwave oven is not properly closed	Remove foreign bodies stuck in the door of the microwave oven and close door properly

14.9 Refrigerator







In the event of a defect contact the nearest customer service workshop of the relevant appliance manufacturer. The list of addresses is enclosed with the accompanying appliance documentation. Only authorised qualified personnel may repair the appliance.

14.9.1 General faults

Fault	Cause	Remedy	
The desired refrigerating temperature is not achieved	Incorrect setting	Set the temperature with the temperature controller	
	Too much fresh food put into it	Set the temperature with the temperature controller	
	Ventilation is not sufficient		Check if ventilation grills are covered; remove covers if necessary
			Remove ventilation grills and clean the space behind them (of leaves etc.)
	Ambient temperature is too high	Remove the ventilation grills periodically	
	Too much ice on the cooling fins		Check refrigerator door for correct closing
			Defrost the refrigerator
Refrigerator is inclined		Position the vehicle horizontally	

14.9.2 Dometic MES/AES





- ▷ In the event of a fault, the illuminated Fault button will flash. Also, either one of the illuminated buttons for operating mode or the cooling level indicator will flash. In addition, a warning signal will sound.

Fault	Cause	Remedy
LED "  " flashes	No 230 V power supply	Connecting the 230 V power supply
	230 V automatic circuit breaker has triggered	Switch on the 230 V automatic circuit breaker
	230 V operating voltage too low	Have the 230 V power supply checked by an authorised specialist workshop
LED "  " flashes	Fuse on the transformer/rectifier is defective	Replace fuse on the transformer/rectifier
	Disconnecter relay in the transformer/rectifier is defective	Contact customer service
	12 V operating voltage too low	Have the 12 V power supply checked by an authorised specialist workshop
	No D+ signal	Contact customer service
LED "  " flashes ¹⁾	Lack of gas	Open regulator tap and gas isolator tap
		Connect a full gas bottle
	Cobwebs or burnt residue in the burning chamber	Remove the ventilation grill on the outside of the vehicle and clean the burning chamber
LEDs for display of the cooling level are flashing	Temperature sensor defective	Contact customer service
LED "  " and LEDs for display of the cooling level are flashing	230 V heater element defective	Contact customer service
LED "  " and LEDs for display of the cooling level are flashing	12 V heater element defective	Contact customer service
LED "  " and LEDs for display of the cooling level are flashing	Faulty burner or power unit	Contact customer service

¹⁾ After fixing the issue, press the illuminated button for "Fault"/"Reset".

14.9.3 Thetford N 3000

For certain faults, indicators also flash on the operating panel.

Fault	Cause	Remedy
LEDs for types of energy and display of the temperature range flash	Refrigerator does not work	Switch refrigerator off and on again
		Check availability of an energy source
LED "  " and LEDs for display of the temperature range flash	No 230 V power supply	Connect the 230 V power supply
	230 V automatic circuit breaker has triggered	Switch on the 230 V automatic circuit breaker
	230 V operating voltage too low	Have the 230 V power supply checked by an authorised specialist workshop
LED "  " and LEDs for display of the temperature range flash	Fuse on the transformer/rectifier is defective	Replace fuse on the transformer/rectifier
	Disconnecter relay in the transformer/rectifier is defective	Contact customer service
	12 V operating voltage too low	Have the 12 V power supply checked by an authorised specialist workshop
	No D+ signal	Contact customer service
LED "  " and LEDs for display of the temperature range flash	Lack of gas	Open regulator tap and gas isolator tap
		Connect a full gas bottle
	Cobwebs or burnt residue in the burning chamber	Remove the ventilation grill on the outside of the vehicle and clean the burning chamber

14.9.4 Thetford N 97


Any faults are shown with an error code on the LCD display. See the manufacturer's instruction manual for the meaning of individual fault codes.

14.10 Water supply

Fault	Cause	Remedy
Leakage water inside the vehicle	A leak has occurred	Identify leak, re-connect water pipes
No water	Water tank is empty	Replenish drinking water
	Drain cock not closed	Close drain cock
	12 V power supply is switched off	Switch 12 V power supply on
	Fuse of the water pump is defective	Replace fuse on the transformer/rectifier
	Water pump defective	Exchange water pump (have it exchanged)
	Water pipe snapped off	Straighten water pipe or replace
	Transformer/rectifier defective	Contact customer service
	Water pump switched off on panel	Switch water pump on
Toilet has no flush water	Water tank is empty	Replenish drinking water
	Fuse for toilet is defective	Replace fuse
Display for water and waste water indicates a wrong value	Measuring probe in the waste water or water tank is soiled	Clean water/waste water tank
	Measuring probe is defective	Replace measuring probe
Waste water tank cannot be emptied	Drain cock is clogged	Open the cleaning cap on the waste water tank and drain the waste water. Rinse the waste water tank well
Drain on the single lever mixer tap is clogged	Perlator calcified	De-calcify or replace perlator
Water jets on the shower nozzle clogged	Water jets calcified	De-calcify shower nozzle or rub off nozzle burling
Water drains from the shower tray slowly or does not drain at all	The vehicle is not in a horizontal position	Position the vehicle horizontally
Milkiness of the water	Tank filled with dirty water	Clean water tank mechanically and chemically; then disinfect and rinse copiously with drinking water
	Residues in the water tank or water system	Clean water system mechanically and chemically; then disinfect and rinse copiously with drinking water

Fault	Cause	Remedy
Any change in the taste or odour of the water	Tank filled with dirty water	Clean water system mechanically and chemically; then disinfect and rinse copiously with drinking water
	Fuel filled into the water tank by mistake	Clean water system mechanically and chemically; then disinfect and rinse copiously with drinking water. If not successful: Contact a specialist workshop
	Microbiological deposits in the water system	Clean water system mechanically and chemically; then disinfect and rinse copiously with drinking water
Deposits in the water tank and/or water-carrying components	Water excessively long in the water tank and in water-carrying components	Clean water system mechanically and chemically; then disinfect and rinse copiously with drinking water

14.11 Body

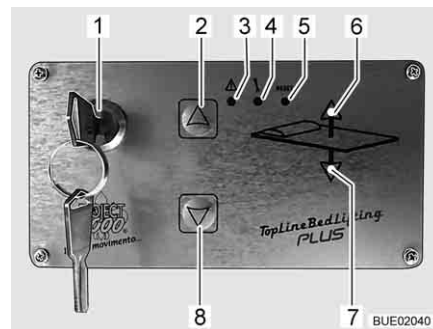
Fault	Cause	Remedy
Flap hinges/door hinges are difficult to operate	Flap/door hinges are not (sufficiently) lubricated	Lubricate flap hinges/door hinges with acid-free and resin-free grease
Hinges/joints in the bathroom unit/toilet compartment are difficult to operate/make a grating noise	Hinges/joints are not (sufficiently) lubricated	Lubricate hinges/joints with solvent-free and acid-free grease  ▷ Spray cans often contain solvents
Storage compartment hinges are difficult to operate/make a grating noise	Storage compartment hinges are not (sufficiently) lubricated	Lubricate storage compartment hinges with acid-free and resin-free grease
Wind-up skylight is difficult to operate	Threaded spindle not lubricated	Lubricate threaded spindle
	Threaded spindle defective	Have threaded spindle replaced

Fault	Cause	Remedy
Electric pull-down bed does not move	Fuse on the transformer/rectifier or on the pull-down bed drive motor faulty	Replace fuse
	Living area battery is empty or the transformer/rectifier has switched off due to insufficient voltage	Charge the living area battery
	Drive is defective	In an emergency, the pull-down bed can be moved manually; afterwards, contact customer service



▷ The authorised dealers and service centres are available for any spare parts requirement.

14.12 Pull-down bed, electrically operated (Ixeo TL)



- 1 Key switch
- 2 UP button
- 3 Alarm LED
- 4 Programme LED
- 5 RESET button (without function)
- 6 UP LED
- 7 DOWN LED
- 8 DOWN button

Fig. 282 Control unit

Fault	Cause	Remedy
All LEDs flash every 0.25 seconds. Pull-down bed does not move	Undervoltage, battery voltage too low	Charge the living area battery
No LED lights up. Pull-down bed does not move	No current at control unit	Check fuse Reserve 3 on the transformer/rectifier. Bring the pull-down bed into the top end position using the crank; then, contact customer service
The pull-down bed moves downwards with UP button and upwards with DOWN button	Operating error: the pull-down bed was lowered as far as it went and the DOWN button was actuated further. The belt wound up the wrong way	Contact customer service
The pull-down bed is not level	The belt is misaligned	Contact customer service

Fault	Cause	Remedy
Alarm LED and Programme LED flash simultaneously every 0.5 seconds	System fault	The pull-down bed must be newly programmed. Contact customer service
Alarm LED flashes every 0.5 seconds and Programme LED is lit permanently	System fault	Bring the pull-down bed into the top end position; then, contact customer service
Programme LED is lit permanently	System fault	Bring the pull-down bed into the top end position; then, contact customer service
Alarm LED flashes once in a second. The pull-down bed is in the top end position	System fault	Contact customer service
Alarm LED flashes every 0.25 seconds. The pull-down bed only moves 10 cm upwards or downwards and, then, stops. After a short waiting period, it moves another 10 cm when you try again	System fault	Contact customer service
The pull-down bed cannot be moved neither upwards nor downwards. (UP LED and DOWN LED may be lit)	System fault	Bring the pull-down bed into the top end position using the crank; then, contact customer service

15.1 Weight details for special equipment



- ▶ The use of accessories, parts and fittings not supplied by us may cause damage to the vehicle and jeopardize road safety. Even if an expert's report, a general type approval or a design certification exists, there is no guarantee for the proper quality of the product.
- ▶ Every alteration of the original condition of the vehicle can alter road behaviour and jeopardize road safety.
- ▶ No liability can be assumed for damage caused by products which have not been released by us. This also applies to impermissible alterations to the vehicle.

Weight details for factory-provided special equipment are listed in the table below. If these objects are either carried in or on the vehicle and are not part of the standard equipment, they must be taken into consideration when calculating the payload.

All weight details are approximate.

Observe the max. permissible gross weight.

The table shows an extract from the list of possible special equipment and the surplus weight in each case.

Item designation	Surplus weight (kg)
Waste water pipes insulated and heated	8
Waste water tank and drainage isolated and heated	8
Airbag (front passenger)	3
Caravan coupling	50
Single-section conversion door with window and insect screen (Premium)	11
External shower	1
External mirrors, electric	2
Automatic transmission	17
Car radio and CD	1-2
Heki skylight midi	5
Omni-Vent skylight	4
Skyroof skylight	13
Extractor hood	4
Electric entrance step	11
Electrical stability program (ESP)	1
Spare wheel 15" with support	22
Spare wheel 16" with support	22
External gas connection	1
Bike rack for 2 bicycles	9
Bike rack for 2 bicycles, lowerable	18
Bike rack for 3 bicycles	11
Bike rack for 3 bicycles, lowerable	19
Roman shade, driver's cabin	15

Item designation	Surplus weight (kg)
CPU remote display	1
Floor warming unit	8
Gas oven/grill	17
Gas bottle (11 kg) made of aluminium	11
Gas alarm system	1
Holder for flat screen	1
Rear garage door, left	8
Truma Combi 6 E heater	5
Insect screen, door (full height)	4
Driver's cabin air conditioning unit	19
Air conditioning unit (Telair)	26
Air conditioning unit (Truma)	33
Fuel tank 120 l	28
Refrigerator (Tec-Tower)	3
Air suspension (Goldschmitt)	13
Awning 300 cm	24
Awning 350 cm	25
Awning 400 cm	28
Awning 450 cm	33
Minisafe	5
Central seating group, convertible into bed	8
Motorcycle rack	75
Multimedia system, incl. reversing camera	5
Fog light	2
Pilot seats, cushions covering as in living area	3
Radio preparation	1
Reversing camera	2
Satellite unit (Teleco) + TV	17
Satellite unit (Oyster) + TV	18–20
Solar installation 1 x 100 W	12
Solar installation 2 x 100 W	20
Rear steadies	6
Tempomat	1
Carpet in driver's cabin	3
Carpet in living area and driver's cabin	14
Door sill	3
Switching facility, gas	2
Vario seat	15
Preparation, second TV location	2–4

Item designation	Surplus weight (kg)
Winter insulation mat, outside	7
Conversion door central locking mechanism	2
Auxiliary battery	26

Engine variants

The vehicle mass in a ready-to-drive state relates to the base vehicle. If a more powerful engine is fitted, the mass increases in a ready-to-drive state.

Engine variant	Surplus weight (kg)
Fiat 2.3 Mjet	0
Citroen 2.0 Blue HDI	0
Fiat 2.3 Mjet Maxi	40

Equipment packages

The equipment packages depend on the model. To calculate the additional weight, add the additional weights of the individual special equipment per package.



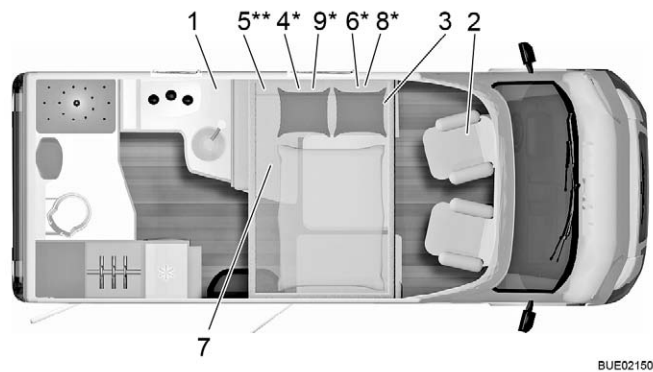
16.1 View of ground plans

Explanations

- (1) 230 V fuse
- (2) Transformer/rectifier with 12 V fuses
- (3) Living area battery with main fuse
- (4) Water pump mounted in the tank area
- (5) Drain cock, waste water tank
- (6) Safety/drainage valve
- (7) Boiler/heater
- (8) Water drain cock - yellow
- (9) Water tank
- (10) Alde hot-water heater
- (11) Alde compensator reservoir
- (12) Alde auxiliary heat exchanger
- * Access via service flap
- ** Beneath the vehicle

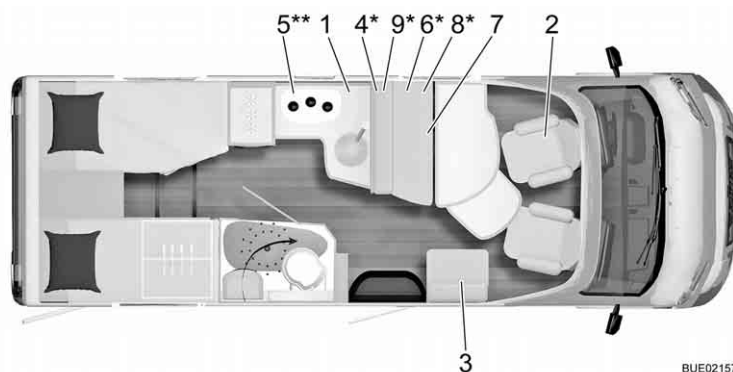
Specifications without guarantee

Lyseo TD Harmony Line



BUE02150

Fig. 283 Ground plan Lyseo Harmony Line TD 590



BUE02157

Fig. 284 Ground plan Lyseo Harmony Line TD 690

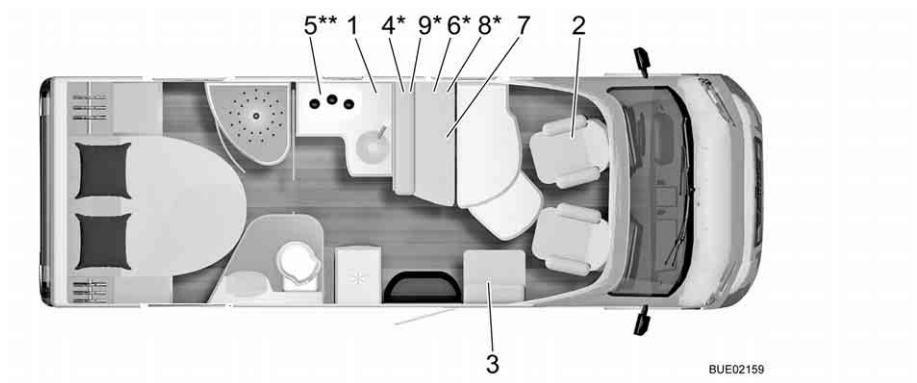


Fig. 285 Ground plan Lyseo Harmony Line TD 700

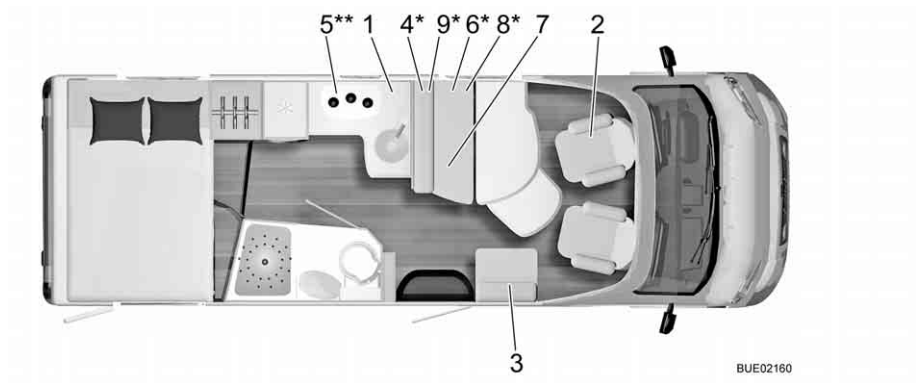


Fig. 286 Ground plan Lyseo Harmony Line TD 710 G

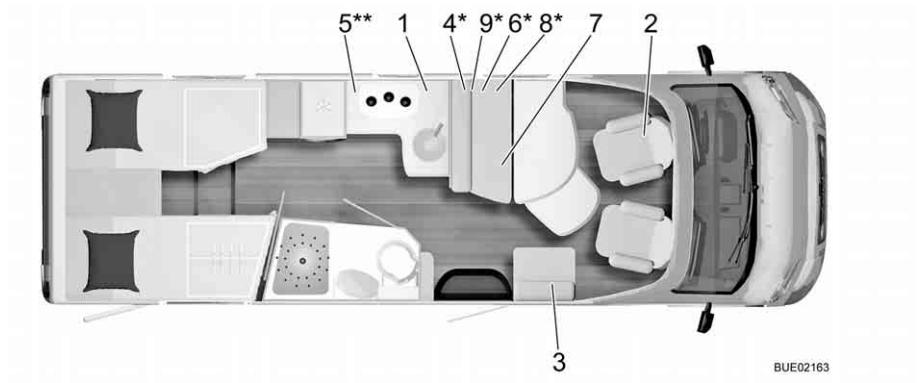
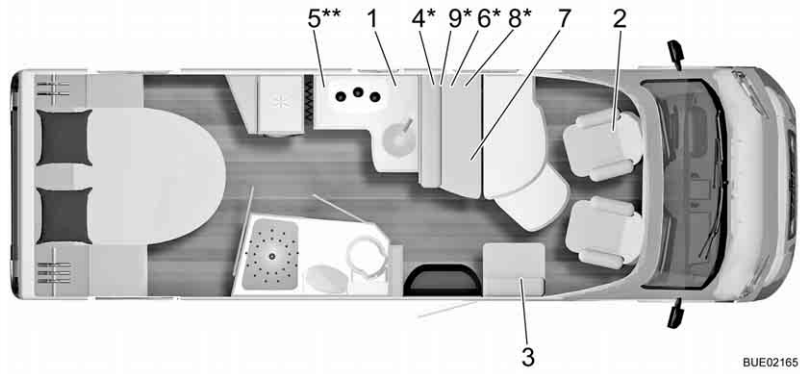
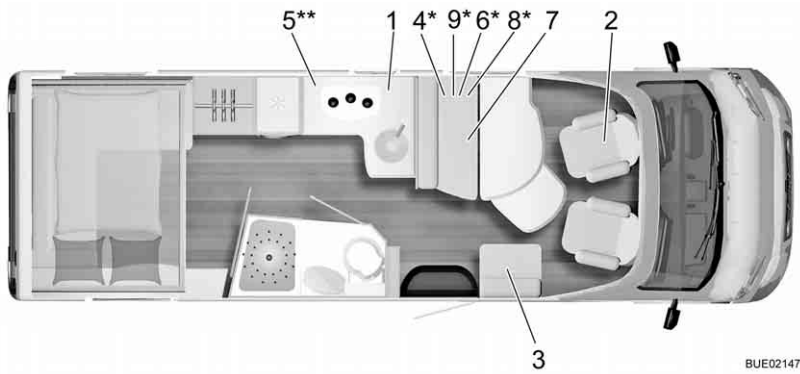


Fig. 287 Ground plan Lyseo Harmony Line TD 728 G



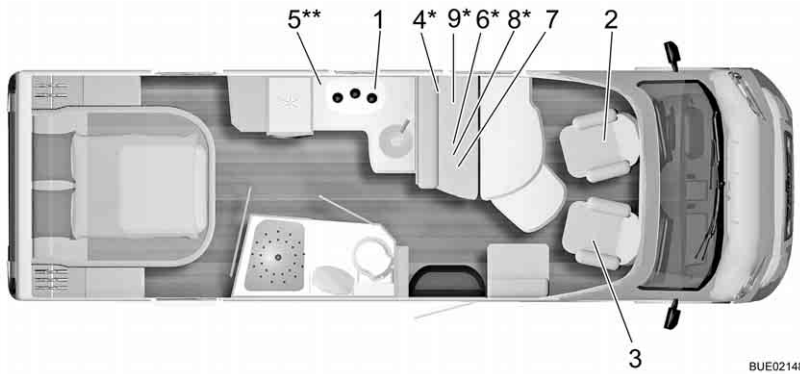
BUE02165

Fig. 288 Ground plan Lyseo Harmony Line TD 734



BUE02147

Fig. 289 Ground plan Lyseo Harmony Line TD 744



BUE02148

Fig. 290 Ground plan Lyseo Harmony Line TD 745

Travel Van

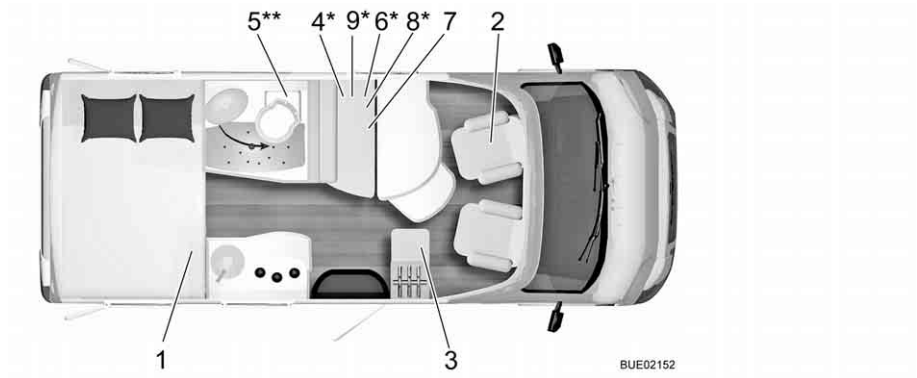


Fig. 291 Ground plan Travel Van T 590 G

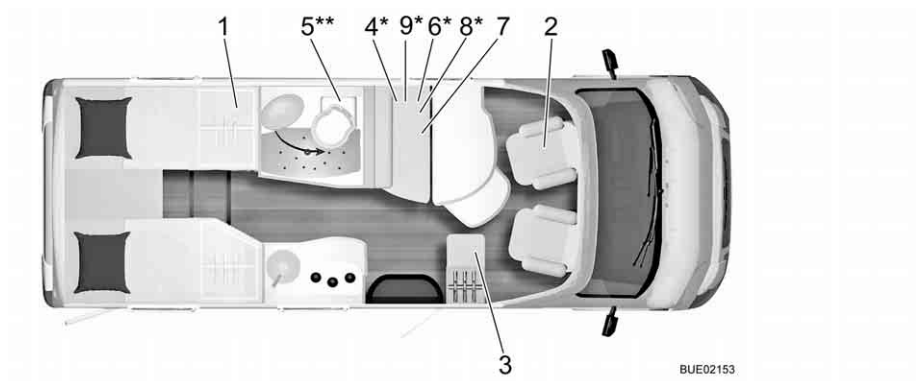


Fig. 292 Ground plan Travel Van T 620 G

Nexxo Time

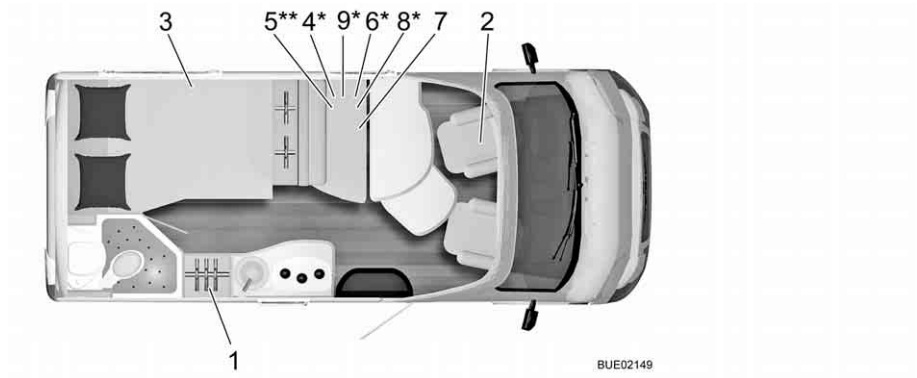


Fig. 293 Ground plan Nexxo Time T 569

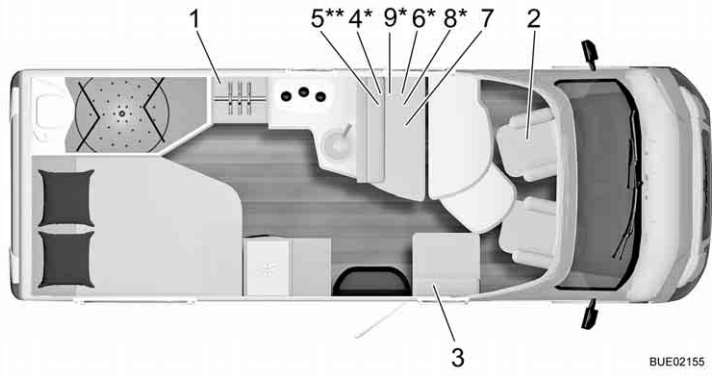


Fig. 294 Ground plan Nexxo Time T 660

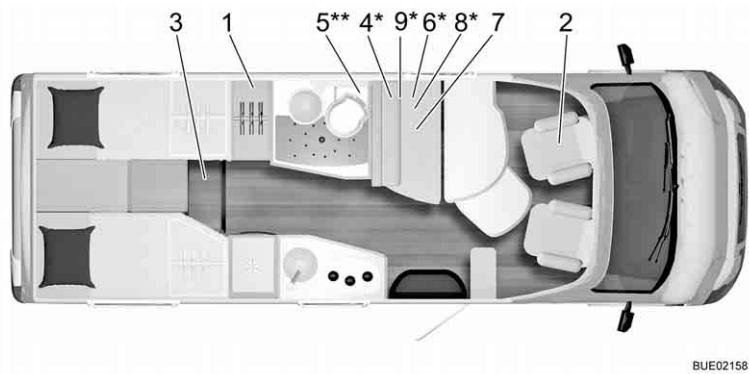


Fig. 295 Ground plan Nexxo Time T 690 G

Ixeo Time

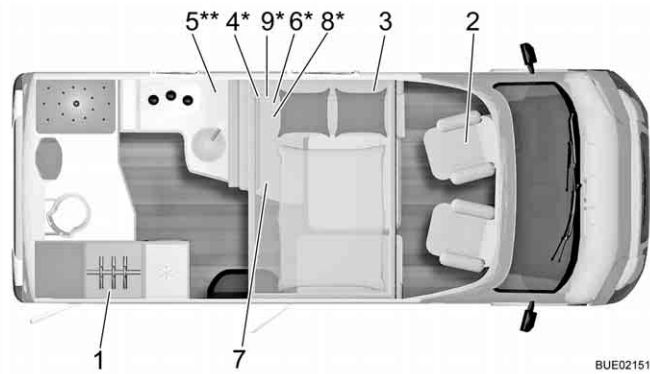


Fig. 296 Ground plan Ixeo Time IT 590

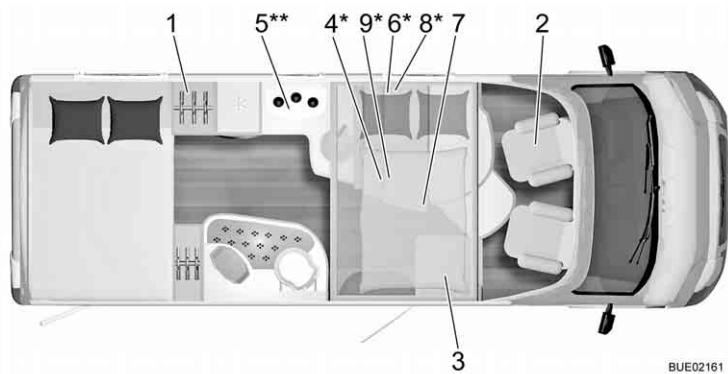


Fig. 297 Ground plan Ixeo Time IT 710 G

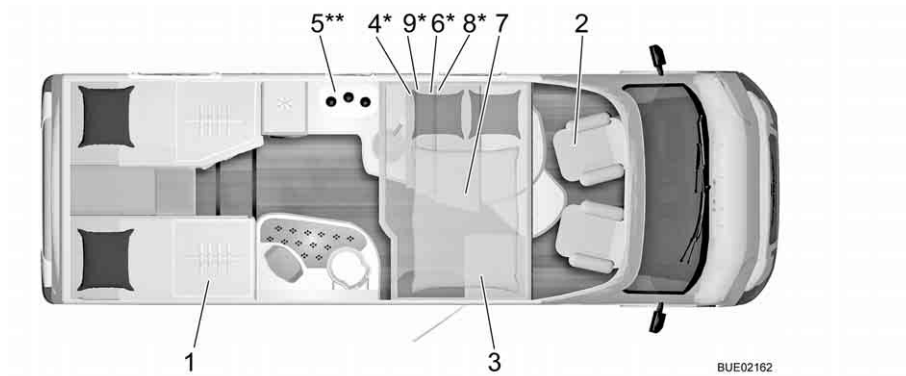


Fig. 298 Ground plan Ixeo Time IT 726 G

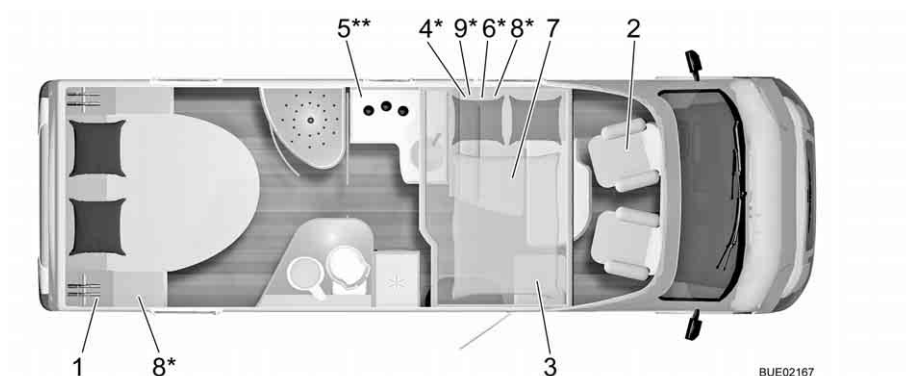


Fig. 299 Ground plan Ixeo Time IT 734

Ixeo TL

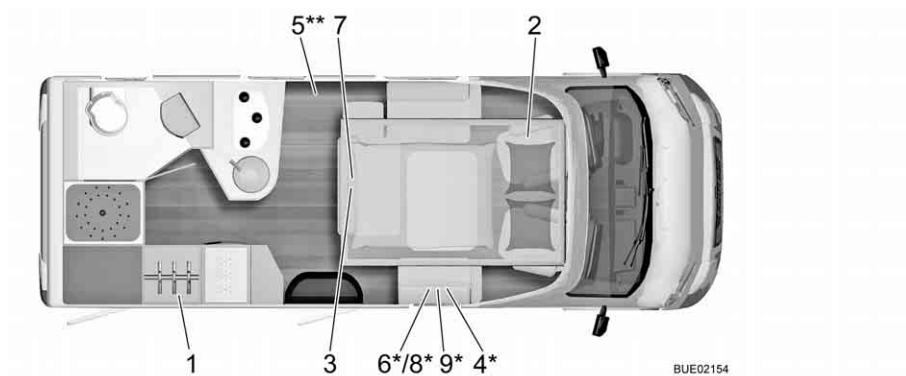


Fig. 300 Ground plan Ixeo TL IT 640

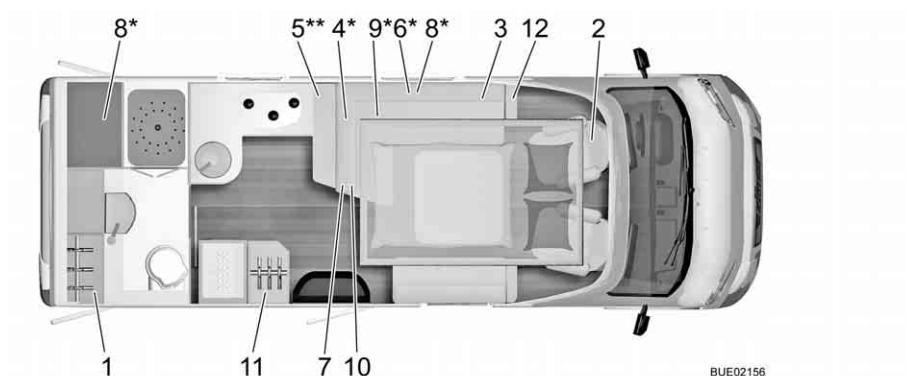
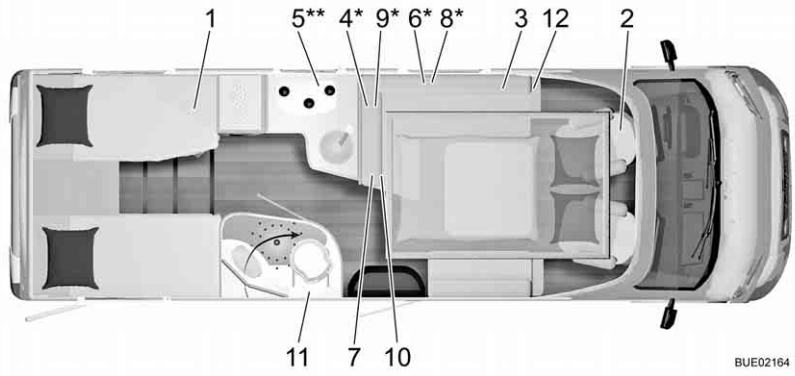
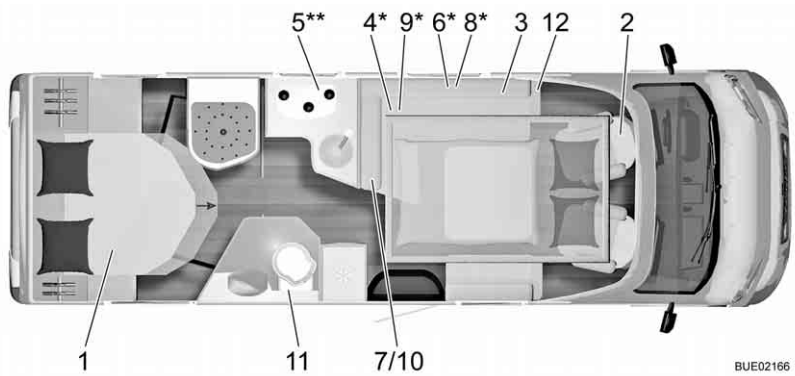


Fig. 301 Ground plan Ixeo TL IT 680



BUE02164

Fig. 302 Ground plan Ixeo TL IT 728 G



BUE02166

Fig. 303 Ground plan Ixeo TL IT 734

16.2 Table of linear measures

	Type	Wheelbase in cm	Length in cm	Width in cm	Height in cm
Lyseo TD Harmony Line	590	380	599	230	295
	700	404	699	230	295
	710 G	404	710	230	295
	728 G	430	749	230	295
	734	430	749	230	295
	744	430	749	230	295
	745	430	764	230	295
Travel Van	T 590 G	345	599	218	285
	T 620 G	345	660	220	275
Nexxo Time	T 569	345	589	230	275
	T 660	380	679	230	275
	T 690 G	380	699	230	275
Ixeo Time	IT 590	380	599	230	280
	IT 710 G	404	699	230	280
	IT 726 G	404	714	230	280
	IT 734	404	739	230	275
Ixeo TL	IT 640	380	649	230	298
	IT 680	404	699	230	275
	IT 728 G	430	749	230	275
	IT 734	430	749	230	275

Chapter overview

This chapter contains helpful tips for the journey.

At the end of the chapter there is a checklist containing the most important equipment for the journey.

17.1 Traffic rules in foreign countries



- ▷ The vehicle driver is required to inform himself as to the traffic rules of the countries in which he plans to travel before beginning the trip. Contact your automobile club or embassy for further information.
- ▷ In some European countries, warning vests must be worn when exiting the vehicle outside of towns in the case of vehicle failures or accidents.
- ▷ Depending on the country, different rules and regulations apply (e.g. different warning signs for rear carriers, obligation to carry breathalyzer kits, spare bulbs, high-visibility vests, size of reserve canister). The driver of the vehicle must familiarise him or herself with these rules before every journey.
- ▷ Up-to-date information can generally be found on the web pages of the national automobile associations.

Information about traffic regulations is especially important as state law applies in case of damage. For your own safety, always observe the following rules when travelling abroad:

- Carry your insurance certificate with you.
- Always register accidents with the police.
- Never sign documents that you have not read and understood completely.

17.2 Help on Europe's roads



- ▷ Before commencing the trip, gather information on national phone numbers for rescue and police. In many countries the central emergency phone number 112 (without area code) applies.
- ▷ As far as possible, draw up a list with the important phone numbers in the travelled countries and keep the table in the vehicle.

Motoring clubs at home or in the travelled country are happy to help.

17.3 Gas supply in European countries



- ▷ In Europe, there are several different connection systems for gas bottles. It is not always possible to fill or exchange your gas bottles in a foreign country. Get information about the connection system in the country you are travelling to before embarking on your journey, e.g. at a motoring club or in the trade press.

General tips

Always observe the following instructions:

- Only go on vacation with completely filled gas bottles.
- Use all of the gas bottles' capacity.
- Take along adapter sets (available in camping supply stores) for filling gas bottles in foreign countries and for connecting the gas pressure regulator to foreign gas bottles.
- During the cold time of the year observe filling with propane gas component (butane does not gas below 0 °C).
- Use blue bottles from the firm Campingaz (distributed world-wide). Only use gas bottles with safety valves.
- When bottles from other countries are used, check the gas bottle compartments to see if the gas bottles fit into them. Gas bottles from other countries do not always display the same size as your own gas bottles.
- The web site www.mylpg.eu provides an overview of gas suppliers in Europe.

17.4 Toll regulations in European countries

Many European countries have introduced a mandatory toll system. The toll regulations and how they are collected vary greatly from country to country. Nevertheless, ignorance is no excuse. Penalties can be quite severe.

As is the case with traffic regulations, the vehicle driver is required to be familiar with the toll formalities before starting out on a trip. For example, in Austria the vignette does not meet the toll requirements for vehicles that weigh more than 3.5 t. There, a so-called "Go-Box" must be obtained and charged.

Contact your automobile club or the Internet for further information.



- ▷ Windscreens with solar filters can affect the functioning of automatic toll collection systems (e.g. Go-Box). This must be taken into account when acquiring the appropriate device (e.g. Split-Go-Box).

17.5 Tips on staying overnight safely during travel

Prudent behaviour is the most important protective measure for insuring a safe night in the motorhome.

The risk of thievery is reduced to a minimum when the following basic rules are observed:

- Before commencing the journey, close and lock all windows, doors and skylights.
- During high season do not spend the night at highway rest stops or parking areas located along typical vacation routes.
- Several vehicles on one site at the same time do not necessarily decrease the chances of thievery occurring. Consult your own feelings about the parking site.
- Even if it is just for one night, go to a camping site.

- When parking on open space keep emergency routes clear. The way to the driver's seat should be clear. The ignition key should always be within reach.
- Only take with you those valuables which are absolutely necessary for the journey. If possible, store valuables in a small safe and not in the immediate vicinity of windows or doors.
- Always lock up the vehicle.

17.6 Tips for winter campers

The following tips will help make your winter camping experience as agreeable as possible.

- Reserve your parking place in good time. Good winter camping sites are often booked up early.
- Do not start your trip without winter tyres.
- Bring snow chains.
- Choose your parking place with care. Observe the ground beneath you. Snow and ice may melt.
- When the vehicle has been positioned, release the handbrake to prevent freezing.
- No snow walls should be allowed to cover the built-in forced ventilation.
- Keep the built-in forced ventilation free from snow and ice.
- Make sure the air circulation is good. Good air circulation prevents moisture from collecting and makes it easier to heat the living area.
- Cover the single-paned driver's cabin window with insulation mats to avoid thermal bridges.
- Follow the instructions in the section "Gas supply in European countries".
- Use a two-bottle system with automatic controller for the gas system, so that the supply does not run out during the night.
- Only operate the gas system using propane gas.
- Do not use the space behind the heater as a storage space.
- Never operate catalytic ovens or infra-red gas radiators in the interior of the vehicle, since they consume oxygen for burning.
- Lay the 230 V power cable in such a way that the cable cannot be frozen or be damaged (e.g. during snow removal).
- When it is snowing heavily, clear the roof of the vehicle of snow regularly. A few centimetres of powdery snow serves as insulation, but wet snow quickly becomes a heavy burden.
- Before embarking on the return journey, remove all the snow from the roof to avoid impeding vehicles behind you with a "snow flag".

17.7 Travel checklists

The following checklists will help that nothing important is left at home although not everything on the checklists might be necessary.



- ▷ Do not leave checking of documents (e.g. vehicle papers and information) as well as checking the condition of the vehicle until just before commencing the trip. Planning and checking documents well in advance will save unnecessary trouble.

Kitchen area

✓	Object	✓	Object	✓	Object
	Wiping cloth		Cleansing agent (detergent)		Salad servers
	Silverware		Dishcloths		Chopping board
	Turnspit		Glasses		Brush to wash the dishes
	Can opener		Set of knives and forks for grilling		Cloth to wash the dishes
	Ice cube tray		Corkscrew		Matches
	Lighter		Kitchen paper		Thermos jug
	Bottle opener		Garbage bags		Pots
	Air-tight storage boxes		Frying pans		
	Crockery		Stirring spoons		

Bathroom/sanitary items

	Towels		Sanitary items		Toilet paper
	Hygiene products		Toilet brush		Toothbrush glass

Living area

	Dustbin		Deck of cards		Rucksack
	Road atlas		Broom		Sleeping bags
	Bath towels		Dust pan		Pencils and paper
	Bath shoes		Candles		Shoes
	Batteries		Coat-hangers		Shoe polish
	Bed linen		Clothes brush		Sports equipment
	Laundry bag		Pillow		Vacuum cleaner
	Books		Map		Flash light
	Camping guide/ parking space directory		Medicine		Pocket knife
	Binoculars		Mobile phone		Table cloth
	Fire extinguisher		Sewing kit		Drinking bottle
	Gas bottle		Rain clothes		Clothes pins
	Insect lamp		First aid kit		Clothesline
	Insect repellent		Travel guide		

Vehicle/tools

✓	Object	✓	Object	✓	Object
	Waste water container		Gas tube		Snow chains (winter)
	Adapter socket		Fabric tape		Screwdriver
	CEE adapter		Watering can for drinking water		Current-measuring instrument
	Wire		Cable reel		Step
	Spare wheel		V-belt		Wheel chocks
	Spare lamps		Glue		First-aid kit
	Spare fuses		Universal pliers		Vehicle jack
	Replacement water pump		Compressor		Hazard warning triangle
	Hammer		Loops		Warning sign
	Flat wrench		Tube adapter		Warning vest(s)
	Gas filling adapter		Hose clips		Flashing hazard warning light

Outside

	Stay rope		Camping table		Lock
	Bellows		Luggage racks		String
	Camping chairs		Grill		Tent pegs/tightening ropes

Documents

	List of addresses		Registration book		Passport
	Registration confirmation(s)		Driving licence		Writ of protection
	Allergy certificate		Vaccination certificate		Insurance documents
	Instruction manuals		Credit card		Vignette/toll card
	Instruction leaflets for medicines		Identity card		Visa



Pos.	Component	Activity	Interval
1	Auxiliary support	Lubrication	Annually
2	Tyres and wheel rims	Air pressure check (see section 13.7). Visual check for damage	Annually
3	Outside lighting	Function check	Annually
4	Joints, hinges	Lubrication	Annually
5	Refrigerator, heater, boiler, cooker, lighting, flap and door closures, toilet, seat belts	Function check	Annually
6	Windows, skylights	Function check, water ingress test	Annually
7	Cushions, curtains, blinds	Visual check	Annually
8	Sealing strips, edges, rubber	Check for damage	Annually
9	Water supply	Water ingress test	Annually
10	Hot-air system	Function check, clean fan wheel as necessary	Annually
11	Floor skirt attachment	Visual check	Annually
12	Pull-down bed suspension	Function check	Annually
13	Electrical system	Function check	Annually
14	Air suspension (special equipment)	Conservation	Annually
15	Gas system	Official gas inspection	Every two years
16	Connections between the chassis and body	Check	Every two years



Delivery _____ Pos. 1-14
Stamp of the Bürstner dealer
Date _____
Signature _____

1st year _____ Pos. 1-14
Stamp of the Bürstner dealer
Date _____
Signature _____

2nd year _____ Pos. 1-17
Stamp of the Bürstner dealer
Date _____
Signature _____

3rd year _____ Pos. 1-14
Stamp of the Bürstner dealer
Date _____
Signature _____

4th year _____ Pos. 1-17
Stamp of the Bürstner dealer
Date _____
Signature _____

5th year _____ Pos. 1-14
Stamp of the Bürstner dealer
Date _____
Signature _____

6th year _____ Pos. 1-17
Stamp of the Bürstner dealer
Date _____
Signature _____

7th year _____ Pos. 1-14
Stamp of the Bürstner dealer
Date _____
Signature _____

8th year _____ Pos. 1-17
Stamp of the Bürstner dealer
Date _____
Signature _____

12 V fuses	134
For Thetford toilet	136
Heater for waste water pipes	136
On the living area battery	135
On the relay box AD01	135
On the starter battery	134
On the transformer/rectifier	135
12 V indicator lamp	130
12 V main switch	128
12 V power supply	121
Switching on	128
Troubleshooting	231
230 V connection	50, 132
Troubleshooting	230
230 V fuse	139
Position	249
230 V fuse box	139
230 V indicator lamp	131
230 V power supply	132
3-way valve	156

A

Accessories, fitting	12
Actual weight	18
Additional equipment	19
Add-on parts see special equipment	12
Add-on parts, securing	30
Adjustable head section, fixed bed	92
Air conditioning unit (Telair)	
Care	206
Filter, cleaning	206
Operating modes	164
Switching off	165
Switching on	165
Troubleshooting	237
Ventilation grill, cleaning	206
Air conditioning unit (Truma)	160
Air circulation	163
Air distribution	162
Automatic mode	161
Care	205
Cooling	162
Filter, cleaning	205
Heater	162
Lighting	163
Operating modes	161
Remote control	161
Soft-start	163
Switching off	161

Switching on	162
Timer	163
Troubleshooting	236
Air outlet nozzles, adjustment	147
Air suspension (Goldschmitt)	37, 229
Maintenance	201
Antenna alignment	53
Automatic	52
Appliances	145
Manuals	12
Warranty cards	1
Automatic power selection (AES)	173, 176, 179
Awning	55

B

Basic equipment	18
Battery alarm	130
Battery cut-off switch	127
Battery monitor	127
Battery see starter battery or living area battery	122, 123
Battery selector switch	127
Battery voltage, displaying	129
Bed widening, securing	30
Bed widening, single beds	107
Beds	91
Before the journey	17
Bike rack	
Bicycles, loading	24, 25
Load	23
Lowerable	25
Not lowerable	24
Travelling with a loaded bike rack	23
Blind, cleaning	202
Blind, skylight with snap latch	
Closing	80
Opening	81
Blind, window	
Closing	76
Opening	77
Boiler	146
Boiler (Alde)	
Emptying	158
Troubleshooting	235
Water, filling with	158
Boiler (Truma)	147
Emptying	150
Hot water production, switching off	150

Index

Hot water production, switching on	149	Roman shade	202
Operating modes	151	Scratch-resistant surface	202
Position	249	Seat belt	202
Safety/drainage valve	150	Sink	202
Troubleshooting	233	Synthetic parts, interior	201
Water, filling with	150	Temporary lay-up	207
Brakes	37	Upholstery	201
Check	37, 229	Washing	200
Braking system, troubleshooting	229	Waste water tank	203
Breakdown services in Europe	257	Water pipes	204
Bulbs, changing	214	Water system	203
Exterior lighting	214	Water tank	203
Interior lighting	217	Windows	200
Rear lights	216	Winter lay-up	209
Side lights	216	Carpet, cleaning	201
Spotlight	218	Central locking system	57
Surface mounted light	218	Remote control	57
Types of external bulbs	217	Charging condition, displaying	
Butane gas	15, 110	Living area battery	129
		Starter battery	129
		Chassis number	220
		Checklist	
		Before the journey	33
		For the journey	260
		Initial start-up after temporary lay-up	210
		Road safety	33
		Temporary lay-up	208
		Winter lay-up	209
		Checks see checklist	33, 208
		Child restraint systems	39
		ISOFIX child safety seat	
		mounting system	41
		Children's beds	94, 97, 99
		Circuit diagram, exterior	143
		Circuit diagram, interior	141
		Circulating pump, setting the	
		rotational speed	156
		Circulation fan	146, 147
		Cleaning see care	199
		Cleaning, water tank	203
		Closed circuit current	119
		Coffee table	91
		Condensation	72, 73
		Condensation on the double	
		acrylic glass pane	73
		Condensation on the screwed	
		connections in the floor	72
		Connecting cable see	
		230 V power supply	132
		Connection diagram, panel (LT 96)	142
C			
Cable reel	132		
Camping gas bottles, use	16, 111		
Camping in winter	259		
Capacity of the battery	120		
Caravan couplings	27		
Tow ball	26		
With detachable ball neck	26		
Care	199		
Air conditioning unit (Telair)	206		
Air conditioning unit (Truma)	205		
Blind	202		
Carpet	201		
Curtains	201		
Entrance step	200		
External care	199		
Extractor hood	205		
Furniture surfaces	201		
Gas cooker	202		
High-pressure cleaner, washing with	199		
Hot-water heater	212		
In the winter	206		
Insect screen	202		
Interior care	201		
Lamps	201		
Leather covers	201		
Net curtains	201		
PVC-floor covering	202		

Conventional load	19
Conversion door	58, 60
Roman shade, closing	60
Roman shade, opening	60
Unlocking	57
Conversion door, inside	
Locking	59
Opening	59
Conversion door, outside	
Locking	58, 59
Opening	58, 59
Conversion to bed foundation (lift-off table)	89, 90
Conversion to bed foundation (suspension table)	88
Converting seating group into bed	101
Cooker	166
Troubleshooting	237
Cooker see gas cooker or gas oven	167
Curtains, cleaning	201

D

Danger of suffocation	12, 72
Dimensions see table of linear measures	256
Direction indicator	215
Displays	
Battery voltage	129
Waste water tank level	130
Water tank level	130
Disposal	
Household waste	8
Sewage	8
Waste water	8
Door lock	58, 59
Doors	
Conversion door	58
Lock	58, 59
Locking	57
Maintenance work	211
Troubleshooting	242
Unlocking	57
Doors, securing	30
Drain cock, waste water tank	192
Position	249
Drain cocks, position	159, 249
Drinking water filler neck	186
Driver's seat	42

Driving speed	36
Driving the motorhome	35
During the journey	35

E

Electrical system	119
230 V connection, troubleshooting	230
Entrance step, troubleshooting	230
Explanation of terms	119
Lighting, troubleshooting	230
Safety instructions	16
Troubleshooting	230
Emergency release	62
Entrance step	47
Care	200
Electrically operated	28
Extending	28
Indicator lamp	28, 29
Retracting	29
Troubleshooting	230
Environmental tips	8
Exterior lighting	
Bulbs, changing	214
Checking	33
Troubleshooting	230
External care	199
External connection see 230 V connection	50
External flaps	61, 63
Flap lock	61, 62
External gas connection	113
External shower	108
Connection	108
Emptying	108
External socket	140
Extractor hood	171
Active carbon filter, replacing	212
Care	205
Metal grease filter, cleaning	205

F

Fault current protection switch	132
Check	139
Filling level of the waste water tank, displaying	130
Filling level of the water tank, displaying	130
Filling the tank	45
Fire	
Behaviour in the event of	11
Extinguishing	11

Index

- Fire prevention 11
- Fire risks, avoidance 11
- FI-switch see fault current protection switch 139
- Fixed bed 91, 92
- Closing 91
- Head section, lowering 92
- Head section, raising 92
- Opening 91
- Fixed bed, height adjustable via strap system 93
- Fixed bed, hydraulic height adjustable 92
- Fixed table 87
- Table leg 87
- Table top, extending 87
- Table top, making smaller 87
- Table top, moving 87
- Flap lock 63
- Closing 61, 62
- Opening 61, 62
- Service flap 62
- With recessed handle 61
- Flat screen
- Positioning 70, 71, 72
- Removing 72
- Storing 70, 71
- Flat screen with holder 70
- Positioning 70
- Storing 70
- Floor compartment 65
- Closing 65
- Opening 65
- Floor warming unit, electrical
- Overload protection 160
- Switching off 160
- Switching on 160
- Forced ventilation 12, 72
- Front passenger's seat 42
- Fuel filler neck 45
- Furniture flaps 63
- Closing 64, 65
- Opening 63, 64, 65
- Furniture flaps, troubleshooting 242
- Furniture surfaces, cleaning 201
- Fuse box 139
- Fuses
- 12 V fuses 134
- 230 V fuse 132, 139
- For the Thetford toilet 136
- Heater for waste water pipes 136
- On the living area battery 135
- On the relay box AD01 135
- On the starter battery 134
- On the transformer/rectifier EBL 119 135
- Fuses see 12 V fuses and 230 V fuse 134
- G**
- Garage flap 62
- Gas bottle compartment 15, 110
- Gas bottles
- Changing 117
- Safety instructions 15, 111
- Gas connection, external 113
- Gas cooker
- Cleaning 202
- Switching off 168
- Switching on 167
- Troubleshooting 237
- Gas isolator taps 112
- Symbols 112, 145
- Gas odour 14, 109, 232
- Gas oven 168
- Switching off 169
- Switching on 169
- Troubleshooting 237
- Gas pressure regulator, screw connections 111
- Gas regulator 31
- Gas supply in European countries 258
- Gas system 109
- Defect 14, 109, 232
- General instructions 14
- No gas 232
- Safety instructions 14, 109
- Switching automatics 114
- Troubleshooting 232
- General instructions 8
- Ground plans 249
- Guest bed 103
- H**
- Handbrake 47
- Applying 12
- Handling of tyres 223
- Headrests 43
- Heat exchanger (Alde)
- Position 157
- Turning off 157
- Turning on 157

Heater	146	Operating modes	155
Air outlet nozzles, adjustment	147	Operating unit	152
Circulation fan	146, 147	Rotational speed, circulating pump	156
Heat circulation, regulating	156	Safety instructions	152
Hot air distribution	147	Start screen	153
Initial start-up	146	Tool menus	154
Troubleshooting	233	Troubleshooting	235
Heater for the waste water tank and waste water pipes	193		
Heater for waste water pipes, fuses	136	I	
Heki skylight	81	Indicator lamp, 12 V power supply	130
Closing	81	Indicator lamp, 230 V power supply	131
Insect screen	82	Indicator lamp, entrance step	29
Opening	81	Indicator lamp, toilet	196, 197
Roman shade	82	Information stickers	220
Ventilation position	81	Inner door, troubleshooting	242
Help on Europe's roads	257	Insect screen door	
High rate of gas consumption	14, 109, 232	Closing	60
High-pressure cleaner, washing with	199	Opening	60
Hinged window		Insect screen Omni-Vent skylight	
Blind	76	Closing	83
Closing	75	Opening	83
Continuous ventilation	75	Insect screen, cleaning	202
Insect screen	77	Insect screen, Heki skylight	
Opening	74	Closing	82
Roman shade	77	Opening	82
Hot air distribution	147	Insect screen, Skyroof skylight	
Hot-air heater	147	Closing	86
Circulation fan	146, 147	Opening	86
Operating modes	151	Insect screen, windows	
Operating unit	147	Closing	77
Position	249	Opening	77
Troubleshooting	233	Inspection plan	263
Hot-water heater		Inspection work	211
230 V electrical operation, selecting	155	Inspections	211
3-way valve	156	Interior care	201
Adjustment menu	154	Interior lighting	
Auxiliary circulating pump	157	Bulbs, changing	217
Care	212	Troubleshooting	230
Fluid level, checking	213	ISOFIX child safety seat mounting system	41
Gas and 230 V electrical operation, selecting	155		
Gas operation, selecting	155	K	
Heat exchanger	157	Keys	17
Heater, switching off	155		
Heater, switching on	155	L	
Heating fluid, topping up	213	Lamps	217
Heating system, bleeding	214	Cleaning	201
Maintenance work	212	Lay-up	
		Temporary	207
		Winter lay-up	209

Index

- Leakage water inside the vehicle 241
- Leather covers, cleaning 201
- Lift-off table 89
- Conversion to bed foundation 89, 90
 - Moving in a crossways direction 89
 - Moving in a lengthways direction 89
 - Table leg 89, 90
 - Table top 89, 90
 - Table top, moving 90
 - Table top, moving upwards 89, 90
- Light switch
- Living area 67
 - Toilet compartment 67
- Lighting
- Front 215
 - Lamps, cleaning 201
 - Rear 216
 - Side 216
 - Troubleshooting 230
- Living area battery 123
- Battery alarm 130
 - Fuses 135
 - Instructions 123
 - Maintenance work 212
 - Position 249
 - Troubleshooting 230, 231
 - Voltage, displaying 129
- Load 21
- Bike rack 23
 - Rear garage 22
 - Rear storage space 22
- Load rack 25
- Load see also payload 21
- Lock
- Conversion door 58, 59
 - External flap 61, 62
 - Furniture flap 63
- Low beam 215
- L-seating group, sleeping conversion 105, 106
- M**
- Main beam 215
- Maintenance 211
- Maintenance work 211
- Air conditioning unit (Telair) 206
 - Air conditioning unit (Truma) 205
 - Doors 211
 - Extractor hood 212
 - Hot-water heater 212
 - Living area battery 212
 - Marker light 216
 - Mass in ready-to-drive condition 18, 20
 - Maximum permissible gross weight 18, 20
 - Mechanical steady legs
 - Extending 48, 49
 - Length, adjustment 48, 49
 - Retracting 49
 - Microwave oven
 - Switching off 170
 - Switching on 170
 - Troubleshooting 238
 - Monitor, reversing camera 36
- N**
- Net curtains, cleaning 201
 - Nose weight 26
- O**
- Off-load voltage 119
 - Omni-Vent skylight 82
 - Aerating 83
 - Boost function 83
 - Closing 82
 - Fan, switching off 83
 - Opening 82
 - Venting 83
 - Operating modes, air conditioning unit (Telair) 164
 - Operating modes, air conditioning unit (Truma) 161
 - Operating modes, boiler (Alde) 155
 - Operating modes, boiler (Truma) 151
 - Operating modes, hot-air heater 151
 - Operating modes, hot-water heater 155
 - Operating modes, refrigerator (Dometic) 173
 - Operating modes, refrigerator (Thetford) 176, 179
 - Operating unit, hot-air heater 147
 - Oven see gas cooker or gas oven 168
 - Overloading 21
- P**
- Panel (LT 96) 128
 - 12 V indicator lamp 130
 - 12 V main switch 128
 - 230 V indicator lamp 131
 - Battery voltage, displaying 129

Button for water pump	130	Refrigerator door	
Connection diagram	142	Closing	183
Filling level of the waste water tank,		Locking in the	
displaying	130	ventilation position	182, 183
Filling level of the water tank,		Opening	182, 183
displaying	130	Refrigerator door locking mechanism	
Panel see also displays	128	Closing	181
Parking light	215	Locking in the ventilation position	182
Payload	17, 18	Opening	181
Calculation	20	Refrigerator ventilation grill, removal	172
Composition	19	Registration	17
Example calculation	19, 20	Remote control, central locking system	57
Payload see also load	17	Reversing camera	36
Permissible gross weight see		Risk of frost damage	16, 185, 190
maximum permissible gross weight	17	Road safety	33
Personal equipment	19	Checklist	33
Pilot seat see driver's seat and		Notes for	12
front passenger's seat	42	Roman shade, cleaning	202
Pleated Roman shades	44	Roman shade, driver's window	
Propane gas	15, 110	Closing	79
Pull-down bed,		Opening	79
electrically operated	94, 96, 99	Roman shade, front passenger's window	
Access ladder	96, 98	Closing	79
Checking fuse / emergency operation	243	Opening	79
Emergency operation	96, 98, 101	Roman shade, Heki skylight	
Lifting	95, 97, 100	Closing	82
Lowering	95, 97, 100	Opening	82
Retaining belts, tightening	98	Roman shade, Skyroof skylight	
Safety plates, inserting	96	Closing	86
PVC-floor covering, cleaning	202	Opening	86
		Roman shade, window of conversion door	
		Closing	60
		Opening	60
		Roman shade, windows	
		Closing	77
		Opening	77
		Roman shade, windscreen	
		Closing	78
		Opening	78
		Roman shades, Remis	45
R		S	
Radio	121	Safety cut-out	139
Ramps	47	Safety instructions	11
Rear axle load	26	Cooker	166
Rear garage	22	Electrical system	16
Rear storage space	22	Fire prevention	11
Refrigerator	50, 171	Gas bottles	111
Change-over between		Gas system	14, 109
energy sources	174, 177, 179	Heater	152
Door lock	181		
Faults	238		
Frame heater	175		
Operating modes	173, 176, 179		
Switching on	175, 177, 180		
Troubleshooting	238, 240		
Ventilation grill, removal	172		

Road safety	12	Insect screen	86
Towing	14	Opening	84
Water system	16	Roman shade	86
Wheels, changing	224	Sleeping conversion, L-seating group	105, 106, 107
Safety knob, hinged window	74, 84	Sleeping conversion, lying surface single beds	107
Safety net, pull-down bed	98	Sleeping conversion, semi-dinette	103
Safety plates, pull-down bed	95	Sliding window	76
Safety switch (FI)	139	Closing	76
Safety/drainage valve boiler	150	Opening	76
Position	150, 249	Snow chains	32
Sanitary fittings	185	Sockets	
SAT socket	140	External socket	140
Satellite unit	50, 53	SAT socket	140
Troubleshooting	229	TV socket	140
With automatic antenna alignment	52, 53	USB socket	120
With manual satellite selection	50	Solar charge regulator	131
Scratch-resistant surface, care	202	Solar installation	131
Seat belts	38	Spare parts	219
Cleaning	202	Spare wheel	227
Fastening correctly	38	Spare wheel support	227
Seat heater	42	Special equipment	245
Seating arrangement	43	Description	7
Seats, rotating	66	Marking	7
Selector switch for radio	121	Safety instructions	12
Semi-dinette, sleeping conversion	103	Weight details	245
Serial number	220	Spotlight	69, 218
Setting up the bed	101	Removing	69
Sewage tank		Shifting	69
Emptying	198	Turning	69
Removing	198	Starter battery	122
Retaining clip	198	Charging	122
Shade, Omni-Vent skylight		Discharging	122
Closing	83	Fuses	134
Opening	83	Instructions	122
Shower	194	Troubleshooting	230
Shower connection point, external shower	108	Voltage, displaying	129
Side marker light	216	Start-up	
Single beds, lying surface	107	After temporary lay-up	210
Sink, cleaning	202	After winter lay-up	210
Skylight with snap latch		Staying overnight, during travel	258
Blind	80	Steady legs	48, 49
Closing	80	Extending	48, 49
Opening	80	Length, adjustment	48, 49
Skylights	79	Retracting	49
Troubleshooting	242	Supports see steady legs	48, 49
Skyroof skylight	84	Surface mounted light	218
Closing	84		
Continuous ventilation	85		

Suspension table		Travel cots suitable for children	94, 97, 99
Conversion to bed foundation	88	Troubleshooting	229
Extending	88	12 V power supply	231
Reducing size	88	230 V connection	230
Table leg	88	Air conditioning unit (Telair)	237
Table top	88	Air conditioning unit (Truma)	236
Switching automatics, gas system	114	Battery	230
Symbols		Body	242
For instructions	7	Boiler (Alde)	235
Gas isolator taps	112, 145	Boiler (Truma)	233
Synthetic parts in the toilet		Braking system	229
and living areas, cleaning	201	Cooker	237
		Electrical system	230
		Entrance step	230
		Extractor hood	232
		Furniture flaps	242
		Gas cooker	237
		Gas oven	237
		Gas system	232
		Heater (Alde)	235
		Heater (Truma)	233
		Hot-air heater	233
		Hot-water heater	235
		Inner door	242
		Lighting	230
		Living area battery	230
		Microwave oven	238
		Pull-down bed,	
		electrically operated (Ixeo)	243
		Refrigerator	238
		Satellite unit	229
		Starter battery	230
		Toilet	241
		Water supply	241
		Truma appliances remote control	
		Bluetooth	165
		Mobile communication network	165
		Tube lamp in the rear garage	68
		TV socket	140
		Tyre change see wheels, changing	224
		Tyre specifications	223
		Tyres	221
		Excessive wear	13, 33, 221, 227
		General instructions	221
		Handling	223
		Identification	223
		Load-carrying capacity	224
		Tyre pressure	227
		Tyre selection	222
T			
Table			
Cleaning	202		
Rotating	87, 89, 90		
Table of linear measures	256		
Tables	86, 87, 89, 91		
Tank lid see fuel filler neck	45		
Technical data, dimensions	256		
Television	29		
Thetford toilet			
Flushing	197		
Indicator lamp	197		
Tightening torque, wheels	225		
Tips	257		
Toilet	194		
Flushing	196		
Fuse	136		
Indicator lamp	196		
Preparing	195		
Troubleshooting	241		
Toilet compartment	194		
Light switch	67		
Ventilation	194		
Toll regulations in European countries	258		
Topping up AdBlue	46		
Total discharge	119		
Towing	14		
General instructions	26		
Safety instructions	14		
Traffic rules in foreign countries	257		
Transformer/rectifier (EBL 119)	125		
Circuit diagram	141		
Functions	126		
Position	126		
Transformer/rectifier, position	249		
Travel checklists	260		

Index

U	
Unladen weight	18
Upholstery, cleaning	201
USB socket	120
V	
Vehicle identification plate	220
Vehicle lighting see exterior lighting	214
Vehicle, washing	200
Ventilation	72
Toilet compartment	194
Volume of waste water, displaying	130
Volume of water, displaying	130
W	
Wardrobe light	68
Warning stickers	220
Warranty cards	1
Washing with a high-pressure cleaner	199
Waste gas vent on the right hand side of the vehicle.	146
Waste water tank	192
Care	203
Cleaning	203
Cleaning opening	192
Emptying	192
Filling level, displaying	130
Heater	193
Troubleshooting	241
Water pipes, cleaning	204
Water pump	185, 186
Button	130
Position	249
Water supply	
General	185
Troubleshooting	241
Water system	186
Care	203
Cleaning	203
Disinfecting	204
Drinking water filler neck	186
Emptying	190
Filling	186
Safety instructions	16
Water tank	186
Cleaning	203
Filling level, displaying	130
Overflow	189
Position	249
Water, draining	189
Water, refilling	188
Weight details for special equipment	245
Wheel chocks	47
Wheel rim size	224
Wheel rim type	221
Wheels	221
Wheels, changing	224
Tightening torque	225
Window, conversion door	
Roman shade, closing	60
Roman shade, opening	60
Windows	73
Blind	76
Insect screen	76, 77
Roman shade	77, 78
Shade	78
Windows, cleaning	200
Wind-up skylight	
Troubleshooting	242
Winter care	206
Winter operation	207
Work top, cleaning	202